# Table of Contents


**Introduction** 4

**Instrument Cluster** 12

Warning lights and chimes 12
Gauges 17
Message center 18

**Entertainment Systems** 32

Setting the clock 40
AM/FM 41
CD 44
Playing a DVD in the system 45
Jukebox features 46
Accessing the help screen 51
Auxiliary input jack (Line in) 59
USB port 61
Satellite radio (if equipped) 64
Family entertainment system 67
Navigation system 88
SYNC® 88

**Climate Controls** 89

Navigation system based climate control 89
Rear window defroster 95

**Lights** 96

Headlamps 96
Turn signal control 103
Bulb replacement 105

**Driver Controls** 109

Windshield wiper/washer control 109
Steering wheel adjustment 111
Power windows 117
Mirrors 119
Speed control 122
Adaptive cruise control 124





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Table of Contents


**Locks and Security** 150

Locks 151
Anti-theft system 165

**Seating and Safety Restraints** 176

Seating 176
Safety restraints 197
Airbags 211
Child restraints 226

**Tires, Wheels and Loading** 244

Tire information 246
Tire inflation 248
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 261
Vehicle loading 267
Trailer towing 273
Recreational towing 278

**Driving** 279

Starting 279
Brakes 285
AdvanceTrac® 287
Transmission operation 295
Reverse sensing system 299
Rear-view camera system 301
All wheel drive 318

**Roadside Emergencies** 325

Getting roadside assistance 325
Hazard flasher control 326
Fuel pump shut-off 327
Fuses and relays 327
Changing tires 336
Temporary mobility kit 343
Wheel lug nut torque 352
Jump starting 353
Wrecker towing 359





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Table of Contents


**Customer Assistance** 361

Reporting safety defects (U.S. only) 367
Reporting safety defects (Canada only) 367

**Cleaning** 368

**Maintenance and Specifications** 376

Engine compartment 378
Engine oil 382
Battery 385
Engine coolant 388
Fuel information 394
Air filter(s) 409
Part numbers 411
Maintenance product specifications and capacities 412
Engine data 415

**Accessories** 419

**Ford Extended Service Plan** 421

**Index** 424



All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2009 Ford Motor Company





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Introduction

## CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Ford Motor Company product. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: www.ford.com
- In Canada: www.ford.ca
- In Mexico: www.ford.com.mx
- In Australia: www.ford.com.au

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

This vehicle's Owner's Guide describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on this vehicle's Owner's Guide when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

## SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION

### Warning symbols in this guide

How can you reduce the risk of personal injury to yourself or others? In this guide, answers to such questions are contained in comments highlighted by the warning triangle symbol. These comments should be read and observed.

### Warning symbols on your vehicle

When you see this symbol, it is imperative that you consult the relevant section of this guide before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.







Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Protecting the environment



We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps towards this aim. Information in this respect is highlighted in this guide with the tree symbol.

### CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning

**WARNING:** Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

### PERCHLORATE MATERIAL

Certain components of this vehicle such as airbag modules, seat belt pretensioners, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

### BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

Drive your new vehicle at least 1,000 miles (1,600 km) before towing a trailer. For more detailed information about towing a trailer, refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on oil usage.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Introduction

## SPECIAL NOTICES

### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* that is provided to you along with your Owner's Guide.

### Special instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

**WARNING:** Please read the section *Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

## DATA RECORDING

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use the SYNC® Vehicle Health Report, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used for any purpose. See your *SYNC®* supplement for more information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Event Data Recording

**Other modules in your vehicle — event data recorders — are capable of collecting and storing data during a crash or near crash event. The recorded information may assist in the investigation of such an event. The modules may record information about both the vehicle and the occupants, potentially including information such as:**

- **how various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled;**
- **how far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal;**
- **how fast the vehicle was traveling;**
- **where the driver was positioning the steering wheel; and**
- **longitude and latitude of vehicle at last location, using GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors.**

**To access this information, special equipment must be directly connected to the recording modules. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. To the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recording applies to SYNC® or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators the vehicle location, and/or other details about the vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the feature. See your SYNC® supplement for more information. Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**information") only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. Ford Motor Company and the vendors it uses to provide you with this information do not store your vehicle travel information. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See your SYNC® supplement for more information.**

### CELL PHONE USE

The use of Mobile Communications Equipment has become increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, drivers must not compromise their own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile Communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile Communication Equipment includes, but is not limited to cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, in-vehicle communications systems, telematics devices and portable two-way radios.

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## EXPORT UNIQUE (NON–UNITED STATES/CANADA) VEHICLE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Guide. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Guide is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Guide for all other required information and warnings.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Introduction

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

**Vehicle Symbol Glossary**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Safety Alert |  | See Owner's Guide |  |
| Fasten Safety Belt |  | Airbag - Front |  |
| Airbag - Side |  | Child Seat Lower Anchor |  |
| Child Seat Tether Anchor |  | Brake System |  |
| Anti-Lock Brake System |  | Parking Brake System |  |
| Brake Fluid - Non-Petroleum Based |  | Parking Aid System |  |
| Stability Control System |  | Speed Control |  |
| Master Lighting Switch |  | Hazard Warning Flasher |  |
| Fog Lamps-Front |  | Fuse Compartment |  |
| Fuel Pump Reset |  | Windshield Wash/Wipe |  |
| Windshield Defrost/Demist |  | Rear Window Defrost/Demist |  |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Vehicle Symbol Glossary**

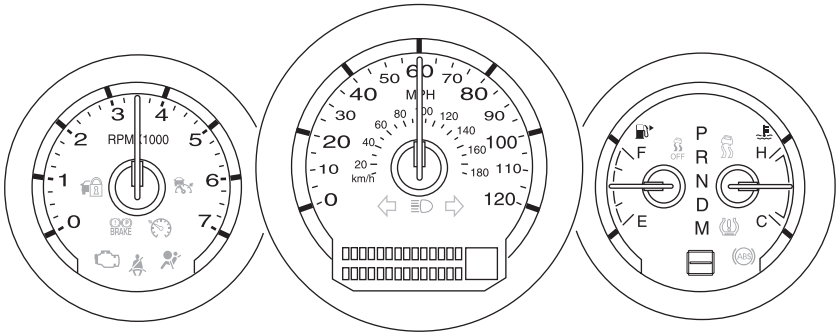
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Power Windows Front/Rear |  | Power Window Lockout |  |
| Child Safety Door Lock/Unlock |  | Interior Luggage Compartment Release |  |
| Panic Alarm |  | Engine Oil |  |
| Engine Coolant |  | Engine Coolant Temperature |  |
| Do Not Open When Hot |  | Battery |  |
| Avoid Smoking, Flames, or Sparks |  | Battery Acid |  |
| Explosive Gas |  | Fan Warning |  |
| Power Steering Fluid |  | Maintain Correct Fluid Level |  |
| Service Engine Soon |  | Engine Air Filter |  |
| Passenger Compartment Air Filter |  | Jack |  |
| Check Fuel Cap |  | Low Tire Pressure Warning |  |





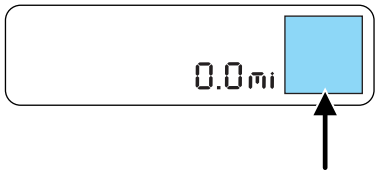
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## WARNING LIGHTS AND CHIMES

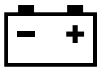



Warning lights and gauges can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause extensive repairs. A warning light may illuminate when a problem exists with one of your vehicle's functions. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure the bulbs work. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light for additional information.

**Note:** Some warning lights are reconfigurable telltale (RTT) indicator lights and will illuminate in the message center. These lights function the same as the other warning lights.




**Charging system (RTT):**
Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a problem with the electrical system or a related component.



**Engine oil pressure (RTT):**
Illuminates when the oil pressure falls below the normal range, refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.







Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Engine coolant temperature (RTT):** Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

**Low fuel (RTT):** Illuminates when the fuel level in the fuel tank is at or near empty. Refer to *Fuel gauge* in this chapter.



**Low washer fluid (RTT):** Illuminates when the washer level in the washer fluid reservoir is low.



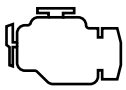
**Door ajar (RTT):** Illuminates when the ignition is in the run position and any door is open.



**Throttle Control/Transmission (RTT):** Illuminates when a powertrain or an AWD fault has been detected. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



**Service engine soon:** The *Service engine soon* indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned on to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, the "Service engine soon" light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the "Service engine soon" light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See the *Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

**Brake system warning light:** To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned on when the engine is not running, or in a position between on and start, or by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned on. If the brake system warning light does not illuminate at this time, seek service immediately from your authorized dealer. Illumination after releasing the parking brake indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction and the brake system should be inspected immediately by your authorized dealer.




**WARNING:** Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

**Anti-lock brake system:** If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.








Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Airbag readiness:** If this light fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned on, continues to flash or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. A chime will sound if there is a malfunction in the indicator light.



**Safety belt:** Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A Belt-Minder® chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter to activate/deactivate the Belt-Minder® chime feature.



**AdvanceTrac®/Traction control:** Illuminates when the AdvanceTrac®/Traction control is active. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately, refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.



**AdvanceTrac®/Traction Control™ off light:** Illuminates when the AdvanceTrac®/Traction Control™ has been disabled by the driver. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.




**Overdrive cancel and grade assist (RTT) (if equipped):** Illuminates when the overdrive function of the transmission has been turned off and the grade assist function has been turned on, refer to the *Driving* chapter.



**Low tire pressure warning:** Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains on at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be checked. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. When the ignition is first turned to on, the light will illuminate for three seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn on or begins to flash, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. For more information on this system, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Adaptive cruise control (ACC) (if equipped):** Illuminates when ACC is engaged while following a vehicle. Refer to *Adaptive cruise control* in the *Driver Controls* chapter for more information.



**Speed control:** Illuminates when the speed control is engaged or when the ACC is engaged without following a vehicle. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged or when the ACC in activated.



**Anti-theft system:** Flashes when the SecuriLock® Passive Anti-theft System has been activated.



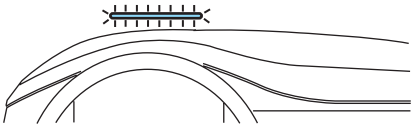
**Turn signal:** Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard lights are turned on. If the indicators flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.



**High beams:** Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are turned on.



**Heads up display (if equipped):** A red bar will illuminate on the windshield in certain instances when using adaptive cruise control and/or the collision warning system. It will also illuminate momentarily when you start your vehicle to make sure the display works. See the *Driving* chapter for more information.



**Key-in-ignition warning chime:** Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the off or accessory position and the driver's door is opened.

**Headlamps on warning chime:** Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

**Parking brake on chime:** Sounds when the parking brake is left on and the vehicle is driven. If the warning stays on after the park brake is off, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

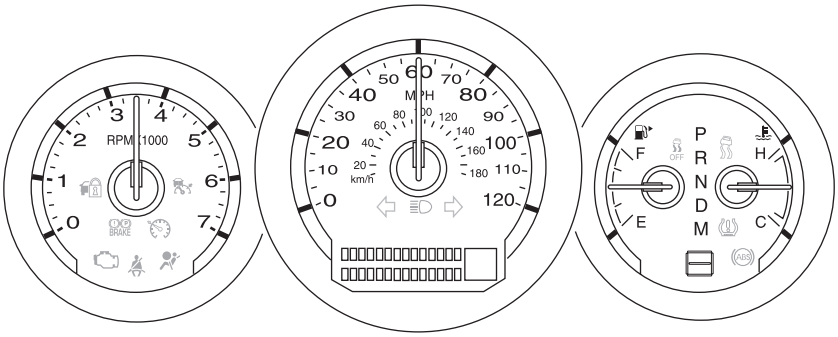




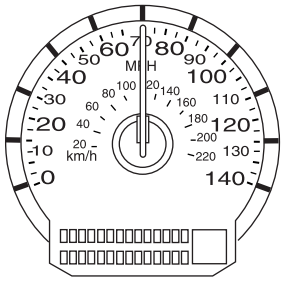
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Message center activation chime:** Sounds when some warning messages appear in the message center display for the first time.

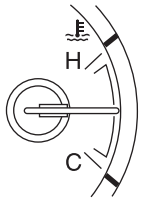
## GAUGES




**Speedometer:** Indicates the current vehicle speed.




**Engine coolant temperature gauge:** Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the needle will be in the normal range (between “H” and “C”). If the needle moves close to the “H” range, the engine is overheating. For more information, refer to *Engine fluid temperature management* and *What you should know about fail-safe cooling* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

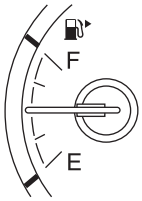





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

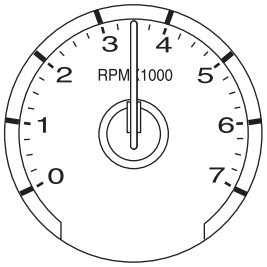
**Fuel gauge:** Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is on). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade.



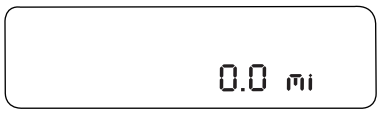

The FUEL icon and arrow indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Refer to *Filling the tank* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

**Tachometer:** Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine.




**Odometer:** Registers the total miles (kilometers) of the vehicle. Refer to *Message center* in this chapter on how to switch the display from Metric to English.




**Trip odometer:** Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument cluster* chapter.

### MESSAGE CENTER

Your vehicle's message center allows you to configure/personalize certain vehicle options to suit your needs.

The message center is also capable of monitoring many vehicle systems and will alert you to potential vehicle problems and various conditions with an informational message followed by a long indicator chime.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The message center display is located in the instrument cluster.

### Info

Press the INFO button repeatedly to cycle through the following features:




**TRIP A/B**

Registers the distance of individual journeys. Press and release INFO until the A or B trip appears in the display (this represents the trip mode). Press and hold RESET until it resets.

Refer to *UNITS* later in this section to switch the display from Metric to English.

**MYKEY MILES (km) (If programmed)**

For more information, refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

**MILES (km) TO E**

This displays an estimate of approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions. Remember to turn the ignition off when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

LOW FUEL LEVEL will display when you have approximately 50 miles (80 km), to empty. Press RESET to clear this warning message. It will return at approximately 25 miles (40 km), 10 miles (16 km) and 0 miles (0 km) miles to empty.

Distance to empty is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is re-initialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

**AVG MPG (L/100km)**

Average fuel economy displays your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing distance traveled by gallons of fuel used (liters of fuel used by 100 kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

To determine your average highway fuel economy, do the following:

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.
2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press RESET (press and hold RESET for two seconds in order to reset the function) after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

For more information refer to *Essentials of good fuel economy* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**MPG (L/km)**

This displays instantaneous fuel economy as a bar graph ranging from ↓ poor economy to ↑ excellent economy.

Your vehicle must be moving to calculate instantaneous fuel economy. When your vehicle is not moving, this function shows ↓, one or no bars illuminated. Instantaneous fuel economy cannot be reset.

**TIMER**

Timer displays the trip elapsed drive time.

To operate, do the following:

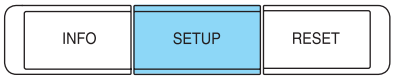
1. Press and release RESET in order to start the timer.
2. Press and release RESET to pause the timer.
3. Press and hold RESET until the timer resets.

**Blank Screen**

The message center display will be blank after cycling through all of the Info menu items.

### *System check and vehicle feature customization*

Press the SETUP button repeatedly to cycle the message center through the following features:




**RESET FOR SYSTEM CHECK**

When this message appears, press the RESET button and the message center will begin to cycle through the following systems and provide a status of the item if needed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. PASSIVE ENTRY PASSIVE START (PEPS)
2. OIL LIFE
3. WASHER FLUID LEVEL
4. DOOR AJAR STATUS
5. LIFTGATE STATUS
6. BRAKE SYSTEM
7. TIRE PRESSURE
8. BLIND SPOT SYSTEM (if equipped)
9. CROSS TRAFFIC SYSTEM (if equipped)
10. ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (ACC) (if equipped)
11. PARK AID
12. FUEL LEVEL
13. MYKEY DISTANCE (if MyKey™ is programmed)
14. MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED
15. ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED

**Note:** Some systems show a message only if a condition is present.

**OIL LIFE**

This displays the remaining oil life.

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule. USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change (approximately 7,500 miles [12,000 km] or 12 months) perform the following:

1. Press and release SETUP to display “OIL LIFE XXX% HOLD RESET = NEW”.

2. Press and hold RESET for two seconds and release to reset the oil life to 100%.

**Note:** To change oil life 100% miles value from 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 12 months to another value, proceed to Step 3.

3. Once “OIL LIFE SET TO XXX%” is displayed, release and press RESET to change the Oil Life Start Value. Each release and press will reduce the value by 10%.

**Note:** Oil life start value of 100% equals 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 12 months. For example, setting oil life start value to 60% sets the oil life start value to 4,500 miles (7,200 km) and 219 days.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**UNITS**

Displays the current units in English or Metric.

Press RESET to change between English and Metric.

**AUTO HIGH BEAM (if equipped)**

This feature automatically turns on your high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present.

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

**AUTOLAMP**

This feature keeps your headlights on for up to three minutes after the ignition is switched off.

Press RESET to select the new Autolamp delay values of 0, 10, 20, 30, 60, 90, 120 or 180 seconds.

**AUTOLOCK**

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when the vehicle is shifted into any gear, putting the vehicle in motion.

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

**AUTOUNLOCK**

This feature automatically unlocks all vehicle doors when the driver's door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being turned off.

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

**COLLISION WARN GAP (if equipped)**

This allows you to adjust the sensitivity setting of the collision warning system. See *Collision warning system* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

Press RESET to change the sensitivity setting from high sensitivity <– – – – –> to low sensitivity <–>.

**COLLISION WARN CHIME (if equipped)**

This feature warns the driver of a possible collision. See *Collision warning system* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

Press RESET to turn the warning chime on or off. The system will revert to chime on each time the vehicle is started. The heads up display and/or chime will activate briefly to confirm the last setting.

**COLLISION WARN SYSTEM (if equipped)**

This feature warns the driver of a possible collision. See *Collision warning system* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Press RESET to turn the collision warning system on or off. The system will revert to on each time the vehicle is started. The heads up display and/or chime will activate briefly to confirm the last setting.

**BLIND SPOT (if equipped)**

The Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) is designed to assist the driver by monitoring the side areas of the vehicle.

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

**CROSS TRAFFIC (if equipped)**

The Cross Traffic Alert system is designed to assist and warn the driver when backing out of parking spaces.

Press RESET to turn it on or off.

**POWER LIFTGATE (if equipped)**

This feature allows users to open/close the rear liftgate at the touch of a button.

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

**EASY ENTRY**

This feature automatically moves the driver's seat backwards for easy exit/entry from the vehicle.

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

**REAR PARK AID**

This feature sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper, and functions only when R (Reverse) gear is selected.

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

**TRAILER SWAY CONTROL (if equipped)**

This feature uses the electronic stability control to mitigate trailer sway.

Press RESET to turn it off or on.

**CREATE MYKEY / MYKEY SETUP/ CLEAR MYKEY**

For more information refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

**LANGUAGE = ENGLISH / SPANISH / FRENCH**

Allows you to choose which language the message center will display in. Selectable languages are English, Spanish, or French.

Waiting four seconds or pressing the RESET button cycles the message center through each of the language choices.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Press and hold RESET for two seconds to set the language choice.

### *System warnings*

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages.

Types of messages and warnings:

- Some messages will appear briefly to inform you of something you may need to take action on or be informed of.
- Some messages will appear once and then again when the vehicle is restarted.
- Some messages will reappear after clearing or being reset if a problem or condition is still present and needs your attention.
- Some messages can be acknowledged and reset by pressing RESET. This allows you to use the full message center functionality by clearing the message.

**DRIVER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the driver's door is not completely closed.

**PASSENGER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the passenger side door is not completely closed.

**REAR LEFT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear left door is not completely closed.

**REAR RIGHT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear right door is not completely closed.

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**FUEL LEVEL LOW** — Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

**CHECK FUEL FILL INLET** — Displayed when the fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed. Refer to *Easy Fuel™ "no cap" fuel system* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when the brake system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**LIFTGATE AJAR** — Displayed when the liftgate is not completely closed. Press RESET to reset display.

**CHECK PARK AID (if equipped)** — Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the reverse sensing system (park aid) is disabled.

**BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**WASHER FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the washer fluid reservoir is less than one quarter full. Check the washer fluid level. Refer to *Windshield washer fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE** — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle has low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT** — Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT** — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**POWER STEERING ASSIST FAULT** — The power steering system has disabled power steering assist due to a system error; service is required.

**SERVICE POWER STEERING** — The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service.

**SERVICE POWER STEERING NOW** — The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service immediately.

**REMOVE OBJECTS NEAR PASS SEAT** — Displayed when objects are by the passenger seat. After the objects are moved away from the seat, if the warning stays on or continues to come on contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**AWD OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the AWD system has been automatically disabled to protect itself. This is caused by operating the vehicle with the compact spare tire installed or if the system is overheating. The AWD system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system is allowed to cool.

**CHECK AWD (if equipped)** — Displayed in conjunction with the Throttle Control/Transmission/AWD  light when the AWD system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**OIL LIFE CHANGE SOON** — Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 10% or less.

**OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** — Displayed when the oil life left reaches 0%.

**TRAILER SWAY REDUCE SPEED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the trailer sway control has detected trailer sway. For more information, refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**INTKEY COULD NOT PROGRAM** — Displayed when an attempt is made to program a fifth integrated key to the remote key entry system. For more information on integrated key, refer to the *Locks and Security* chapter in this manual.

**CRUISE ON RADAR READY (if equipped)** — Displayed when the driver pressed the cruise On/Off control and ACC was off.

**CRUISE OFF (if equipped)** — Displayed when the driver pressed the Cruise On/Off control and ACC was on.

**SET XXX MPH GAP ACC GAP (if equipped)** — Displayed when ACC is active and driver has selected a GAP setting using the steering wheel control <---> button.

**CRUISE OVERRIDE (if equipped)** — Displayed when the accelerator pedal is being pressed while ACC is active.

**CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE (if equipped)** — Displayed when a system malfunction is preventing ACC from engaging.

**CRUISE MALFUNCTION (if equipped)** — Displayed when a radar malfunction is preventing the ACC from engaging.

**CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE SENSOR BLOCKED SEE MANUAL (if equipped)** — Displayed when the radar is blocked because of poor radar visibility due to bad weather or ice/mud/water in front of radar. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**COLLISION WARN MALFUNCTION (if equipped)** — Displayed when there is a system malfunction with the collision warning system. The system will be disabled.

**COLLISION WARN NOT AVAILABLE (if equipped)** — Displayed when there is a system malfunction with the collision warning system. The system will be disabled.

**COLLISION WARN NOT AVAILABLE SENSOR BLOCKED SEE MANUAL (if equipped)** — Displayed when the collision warning system radar is blocked because of poor radar visibility due to bad weather or ice/mud/water in front of the radar. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve.

**PRESS BRAKE TO START (if equipped)** — Displayed when the start/stop button is pressed without the brake pedal being applied. This is a reminder that the brake pedal must be applied when the start/stop button is pressed in order to start the engine.

**SHIFT TO PARK (if equipped)** — Displayed when the start/stop button is pressed to shut off the engine with the shift select lever in any position other than P (Park). Refer to *Fast restart feature* in *Push button start system* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**NO KEY DETECTED (if equipped)** — Displayed if the Intelligent Access Key is not detected by the system in the following three scenarios:
- When the start/stop button is pressed in an attempt to either start the engine or cycle through the ignition states.
- When the engine is running and a door is opened then closed.
- When the vehicle's speed exceeds 10 mph (16 km/h) for the first time after starting. Refer to *Push button start system* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**RESTART NOW OR KEY IS NEEDED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the start/stop button is pressed to shut off the engine and a Intelligent Access Key is not detected inside the vehicle. Refer to *Push button start system* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**ACCESSORY POWER ACTIVE (if equipped)** — Displayed when the vehicle is in the accessory ignition state.

**STARTING SYSTEM FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when there is a problem with your vehicle's starting security system; your vehicle will not be able to start. See your authorized dealer for service.

**KEY PROGRAMMED 3 KEYS TOTAL (if equipped)** — Displayed during spare key programming, when a third Intelligent Access Key is programmed to the system.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**KEY PROGRAMMED 4 KEYS TOTAL (if equipped)** — Displayed during spare key programming, when a fourth Intelligent Access Key is programmed to the system.

**MAX # OF KEYS LEARNED (if equipped)** — Displayed during spare key programming, after a fourth Intelligent Access Key is programmed or upon entering spare key programming mode with four Intelligent Access Keys already programmed to the vehicle.

**MY KEY ACTIVE DRIVE SAFELY** — Displayed at startup when MyKey™ is in use. Refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**KEY COULD NOT PROGRAM** — Displayed when an attempt is made to program a spare key using two existing MyKeys. Refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**VEHICLE SPEED 80 MPH MAX** — Displayed when a MyKey™ is in use and the Admin has enabled the MyKey speed limit and the vehicle speed is 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**SPEED LIMITED TO 80 MPH** — Displayed when starting the vehicle and MyKey™ is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on. Refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**CHECK SPEED DRIVE SAFELY** — Displayed when a MyKey™ is in use and the optional setting is on and the vehicle exceeds a preselected speed. Refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**VEHICLE NEAR TOP SPEED** — Displayed when a MyKey™ is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**TOP SPEED MY KEY SETTING** — Displayed when a MyKey™ is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is 80 mph (130 km/h). Refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**BUCKLE UP TO UNMUTE AUDIO** — Displayed when a MyKey™ is in use and Belt-Minder® is activated. Refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**ADVTRAC ON MYKEY SETTING** — Displayed when a MyKey™ is in use when trying to disable the AdvanceTrac® system and the optional setting is on. Refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**BLIND SPOT SYSTEM FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a fault with the blind spot information system has a fault. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**CROSS TRAFFIC SYSTEM FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a fault with the cross traffic alert system has a fault. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**BLIND SPOT NOT AVAILABLE (if equipped)** — Displayed when blind spot information system is not available. See *Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with Cross Traffic Alert* in the *Driving* chapter.

**CROSS TRAFFIC NOT AVAILABLE (if equipped)** — Displayed when cross traffic alert is not available. See *Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with Cross Traffic Alert* in the *Driving* chapter.

**SENSOR BLOCKED SEE MANUAL (if equipped)** — Displayed when the blind spot information system/cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See *Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with Cross Traffic Alert* in the *Driving* chapter.

**VEHICLE COMING FROM LEFT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the blind spot information system with cross traffic alert (CTA) system is operating and senses a vehicle. See *Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with Cross Traffic Alert* in the *Driving* chapter.

**VEHICLE COMING FROM RIGHT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the blind spot information system with cross traffic alert (CTA) system is operating and senses a vehicle. See *Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with Cross Traffic Alert* in the *Driving* chapter.

**ACTIVE PARK FAULT (if equipped)** — Displayed when a fault has occurred with the active park assist system. Refer to *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**ACTIVE PARK CANCELLED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the active park assist feature has been canceled when it is in use. Refer to *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**CANCELLED BY OVER SPEED (if equipped)**— Displayed when the active park assist feature self cancels due to vehicle speed over the preset limit allowed by the active park assist system. Refer to *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**CANCELLED BY DRIVER INPUT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the autopark feature has been canceled due to driver inputs. Refer to *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**CANCELLED BY ADV TRAC EVENT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the active park feature has been canceled due to the AdvanceTrac® system activating. Refer to *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**CANCELLED BY ABS EVENT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the active park feature has been canceled due to the ABS activating. Refer to *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**ACTIVE PARK REDUCE SPEED (if equipped)** — May display when using the active park assist system. See *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**ACTIVE PARK SEARCHING (if equipped)** — May display when using the active park assist system. See *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**SPACE FOUND PULL FORWARD (if equipped)** — May display when using the active park assist system. See *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**SPACE FOUND STOP (if equipped)** — May display when using the active park assist system. See *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**PULL FORWARD USE CAUTION (if equipped)** — May display when using the active park assist system. See *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**BACK UP SLOWLY USE CAUTION (if equipped)** — May display when using the active park assist system. See *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**BACK UP USE CAUTION (if equipped)** — May display when using the active park assist system. See *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**ACTIVE PARK FINISHED (if equipped)** — May display when using the active park assist system. See *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**REMOVE HANDS PUT IN REVERSE (if equipped)** — May display when using the active park assist system. See *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**ACTIVE PARK NOT AVAILABLE (if equipped)** — May display when using the active park assist system. See *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**ACTIVE PARK DEACTIVATED (if equipped)** — Displayed when the active park feature has been turned off. Refer to *Active park assist* in the *Driving* chapter for more information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**SERVICE ADVANCETRAC** — Displayed when the AdvanceTrac® system has detected a condition that requires service.

**TO STOP ALARM START VEHICLE** — Displayed when the perimeter alarm system is armed and the vehicle is entered using the key on the driver's side door. In order to prevent the perimeter alarm system from triggering, the ignition must be turned to start or on before the 12 second chime expires. See *Perimeter alarm system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

**POWER REDUCED TO LOWER TEMP** — Displayed when vehicle performance is reduced due to high engine fluid temperatures. See *Engine fluid temperature management* and *What you should know about fail-safe cooling* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**SERVICE TIRE MOBILITY KIT (if equipped)** — Displayed when the tire mobility kit requires service. See your authorized dealer for more information.



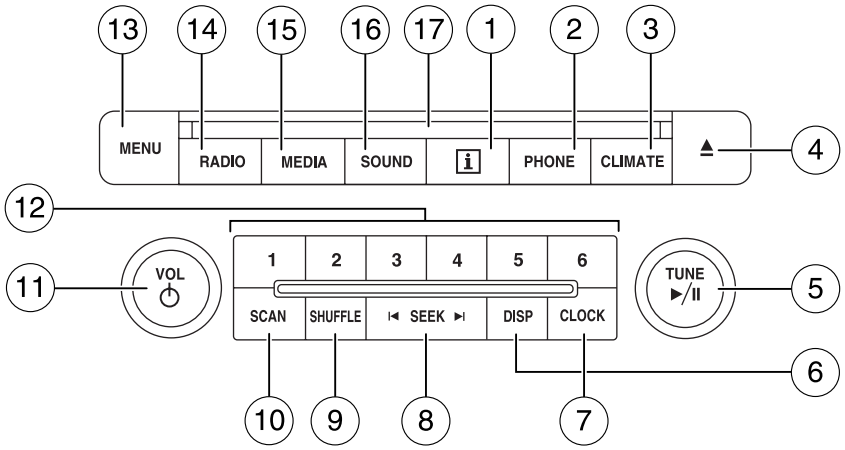
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Entertainment Systems

## AUDIO SYSTEMS

**Note:** If your volume is muted and MYKEY VOLUME LIMITED is displayed, refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

### Mobile media system




**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a mobile media system which allows you to listen to, record and save music, play DVDs (audio and video) and also access some climate control functions. Press the hard buttons on the system face (such as RADIO or MEDIA) to access corresponding menus on the touchscreen. Tabs will appear along the left side of the touchscreen which represent major components within that menu. Simply touch the desired tab to access.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. **I (Information):** Press to access the information menu. Press while the information menu is active to step through the information tabs of: the Calendar, System Info (System Information) and Help.




2. **PHONE:** Press PHONE to access SYNC® phone features. Refer to your *SYNC® supplement* for more information.




3. **CLIMATE:** Press CLIMATE to access the climate menu. Press the button while the climate menu is active to step through the climate menu tabs of Front Zone and Rear Zone.




4. ⏏ **(Eject):** Press ⏏ (Eject) to eject the disc in the slot.



5. **TUNE**: **In radio or satellite radio mode (if activated)**, turn to advance in individual increments up/down the frequency/channel listing.




**In MP3 mode,** turn to advance to the next/previous folder.
▶ /II : Press to play or pause a CD, Jukebox, User Device or DVD when playing in the mobile media system.

6. **DISP:** Press the DISP button repeatedly to step through the following display modes: On, Status Bar Only, and Off.




7. **CLOCK:** Press to access the clock screen and set the time.




8. **SEEK:In radio and satellite radio mode (if activated),** press ◀ /▶ to seek to the previous/next available station or channel within the currently selected Category/Genre.








Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**In CD/DVD, Jukebox or User device mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next track or chapter.

9. **SHUFFLE:** Press to shuffle the songs on the current CD, Jukebox or User Device.

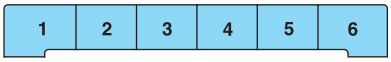



10. **SCAN:** Press for a brief sampling of radio stations, satellite radio channels, CD, Jukebox or User Device tracks.




11. **VOL (On/off/volume):** Press to turn the system on/off. Turn to adjust the volume.

12. **Memory presets: In radio and satellite radio mode (if activated):** Press 1-6 to access your previously saved preset stations/channels.




**To save to a preset:** Tune to the desired station/channel. Press and hold the desired preset button in which you would like to store the station/channel. The sound will momentarily mute and then return when the preset is saved.

13. **MENU:** Press MENU to access the system menu. Press while the system menu is active to step through the system menu tabs of Display, Feedback Settings, System Settings and Valet Mode.




14. **RADIO:** Press RADIO to access the radio menu. Press while the radio menu is active to step through the available radio sources of AM, FM1, FM2, SAT1, SAT2, and SAT3 (satellite radio, if activated).




15. **MEDIA:** Press MEDIA to access the media menu. Press while the media menu is active to step through the available media sources of CD/DVD, Jukebox, User Device, Rear DVD (if equipped) and Rear AUX (if equipped).




16. **SOUND:** Press SOUND to access the sound menu. Press while the sound menu is active to step through the sound menu tabs of Bass/Treble, Balance/Fade, SCV (Speed compensated volume), DSP (Digital Signal Processing), Visualizer and THX Demo (if equipped).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

17. **CD/DVD slot:** Insert a CD or DVD, label side up.

After the system initializes, the screen will be divided in two sections:

- **Status bars:** This is the top and bottom portion of screen that displays the clock or date and useful information, depending on the current mode.
- **Display area:** The interactive screen that is activated by finger touch and changes depending on current system operation. Graphical buttons are displayed in this area depending on the current screen for you to make choices.

### *Driving restrictions*

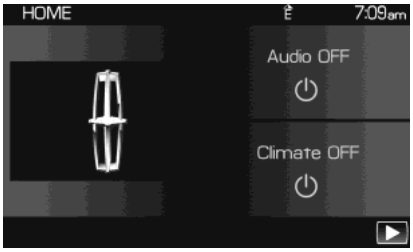
In order to prevent the system from distracting you while driving, access to certain functions are restricted when the vehicle is traveling above 5 mph (8 km/h). Restricted functions include:

- Scrolling of long lists
- Jukebox restrictions such as creating/editing playlists, sorting playlists, editing track, artist and album names
- Uploading photographs
- Similar SYNC® features

### Home screen

Your system has a home screen where you can save/view favorite pictures, view your current audio and climate control settings as well as display the audio visualizer. You can split the screen in to two or three different sections, or you can choose to have one main view.

To access your home screen, press the house icon ( ) at the bottom left hand corner of any screen.




The left side of the screen will display an uploaded photo. The right side can also display the uploaded photo. The upper right panel will only display the current audio settings. The lower right panel displays the vehicle's climate settings (if equipped), the visualizer or the hybrid fuel economy (if equipped). Press ▶ on the bottom of the display to access the settings screen for the right side.



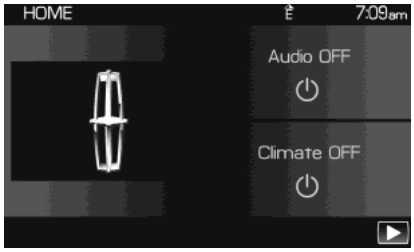
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Loading pictures*

Your system allows you to save and view up to 32 photos. To access:

1. Ensure that you are on the Home Screen. (Press ⌂ at the bottom left of any screen to access.)

2. Touch the left side of the home screen to initiate the left screen photo display and saved photos screen.




3. Select the 'Add' button on the touchscreen. The following disclaimer will appear, "Please confirm the supported photo formats".




4. When the pop-up dialog box with the disclaimer appears, press OK and ensure that you are using the proper format.

5. Insert a CD-ROM which contains your photos as jpegs.

6. Press OK. The photos will be listed on the right half of the screen.




7. Select either ADD or ADD ALL.
The photos are now saved to the hard drive.

Photo display limitations:

- The file must be 1.5MB or less.
- The extension of the file must be one of JPE/JPG/JPEG.
- The CD or DVD must be ISO 9660 format, UDF format is not supported.
- The file path must be 255 characters or less.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Up to 256 files or folders can be displayed in one folder.
- Not compatible with discs written in Packet Write mode.
- Only the photograph(s) which meet these conditions will be displayed.

**Note:** When burning a CD, ensure that you 'close' or 'finalize' the disc when the CD-burning process finishes (you should select this option before you start burning). Consult your software manual or the program's Help files if you're not sure how to finalize the disc. Also, write the audio data into the first session of a multi-session CD as audio systems won't be able to sort through other sessions to find more audio tracks.

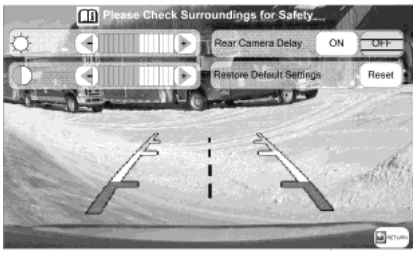
### *Rearview camera display (if equipped)*

Your vehicle may be equipped with a rearview camera on the tailgate which provides a video image of the area behind the vehicle. When the transmission is in (R) Reverse, an image will automatically display on the touchscreen. Once the vehicle is back in (D) Drive, the image will continue to display until you are driving over 5 mph (8 km/h). To remove this image from the screen, press any hard button on the mobile media system.

When the vehicle is in Park (P), you may press SETTINGS to make adjustments to the brightness of the display as well as the rearview camera display.




When the rear camera delay function is ON, it extends the display of the camera image into Drive mode until vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h). This is useful when trying to engage/disengage a trailer.




Prior to using, ensure that the camera lens is clear of any debris, mud, etc. and that both reverse lamps are operational if using at night. For further information, please refer to *Rearview camera system* in the *Driving* chapter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### System menu features

Your system has many menu features such as allowing you to adjust the touchscreen brightness, adjusting the time and languages, adjusting the feedback and system settings. To access, press the MENU hard button.

#### *Display options*




1. Press the MENU hard button.
2. Select the 'Display' tab on the touchscreen. Select from the following display options:

**Brightness:** Select AUTO DIM to manually adjust the brightness by pressing + or —.

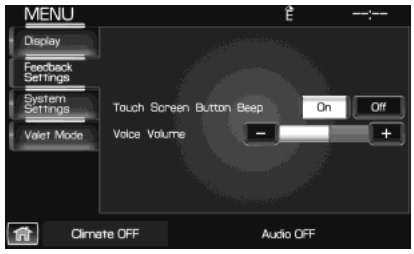
**Contrast:** Press + to increase and — to decrease the level of contrast on the screen.

**Day/Night Mode:** Select 'Day' to always display day mode or 'Night' to always display night mode. Select 'Auto' for the screen to automatically change between day and night mode.

**Color Palette:** Select between four different background colors: 1. Black, 2. Blue, 3. Green, 4. Red.

**Note:** When the headlamps are on under high ambient light conditions, the system will remain in day mode, even if night is selected.

#### *Feedback settings*




1. Press the MENU hard button.
2. Select the 'Feedback Settings' tab on the touchscreen. Select from the following display options:

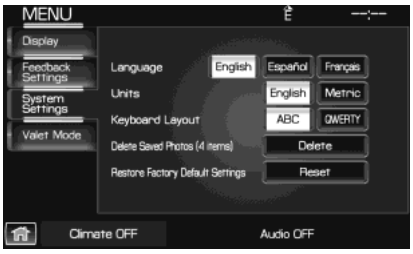
- **Touch screen button beep:** Select to have the system sound a tone when a selection is made on the touch screen.
- **Voice volume:** Press to increase (+) or decrease (-) the system's voice volume.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *System settings*

1. Press the MENU hard button.
2. Select the ‘System Settings’ tab on the touchscreen. Select from the following display options:




**Language:** Select between ‘English’, ‘Francais’ or ‘Espanol’.

**Units:** Select between ‘English’ and ‘Metric’.

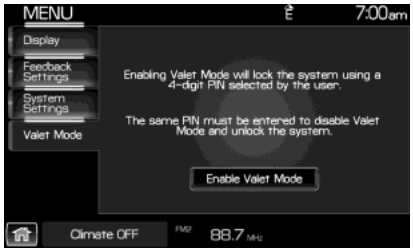
**Keyboard layout:** Select ‘ABC’ or ‘QWERTY’ for the keyboard layout in the display.

**Delete saved photos:** Select ‘View’ to see what stored photos you may want to delete.

**Restore factory default settings:** Press ‘Reset’ to return to the factory default settings.

### *Valet mode*

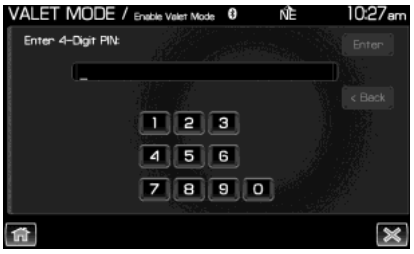
1. Press the MENU hard button.
2. Select the ‘Valet Mode’ tab on the touchscreen. Press ‘Enable Valet Mode’.






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

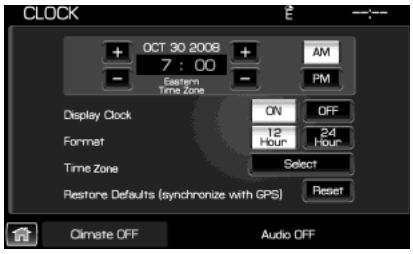
3. Enter a four digit Personal Identification Number (PIN) and press ‘Enter’. The system will ask you to re-enter the PIN. Once entered, select ‘Enable’ to activate Valet mode. The system is then locked until the correct four digit PIN is entered.




**Note:** The PIN can be reset by simultaneously pressing and holding presets 1 and 5 while on the PIN entry screen. After approximately five seconds, the system will transition to the Valet mode screen indicating that the PIN is reset. Once you have reset the PIN, the system will then allow you to set a new PIN.

### Setting the clock

1. Press the CLOCK hard button.
2. Select from the following display options:




**Time set buttons:** To set the time, press +, — to increase/decrease the time and select AM or PM.

**Display clock:** Press to turn the clock display on/off.

**Format:** Press to select between 12 hour and 24 hour format.

**Time Zone:** Press to select your time zone.
**Note:** The system does not implement daylight savings time.

**Restore defaults:** Select ‘Reset’ to reset to the default settings.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### THX audio system — if equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with the THX® certified premium audio system. This system creates optimal acoustic quality for all seating positions and road conditions.

The system offers an advanced speaker system, amplifier, subwoofer and equalizer.

***AM/FM***

1. Ensure that the system is on.
2. Press the RADIO hard button.
3. Select the ‘AM’ tab on the touchscreen to access AM mode.




4. Press the ‘FM’ tab repeatedly to switch between FM1 or FM2 mode.




5. On these screens you may select between ‘Show Options’ and ‘Show Presets’. Press ‘Show Options’ to access:

- **Scan:** Press for a brief sampling of all listenable stations. Press again to disable and remain on the current selection.
- **Scan Presets:** Press for a brief sampling of all the stations held in the memory presets.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- **Autoset Presets:** The autoset feature allows you to set strong radio stations without losing your original preset stations. This feature is helpful on trips when traveling between cities with different radio stations.
  To enable, select AUTOSET PRESETS and the six strongest stations in your current area will be set as presets. To return to your original presets, press AUTOSET PRESETS again and the feature will disable.
- **Rear Zone:** Press to access the functionality of the Family Entertainment System (if equipped).
- **RDS:** In FM mode, this feature allows you to receive text information from RDS-equipped FM radio stations. In FM mode, press RDS to activate/deactivate. RDS must be activated in order to access PTY and SET PTY.
  **Note:** When RDS is active, the visualizer is not displayed.
- **Set PTY:** In FM mode, press to select a program type, which, once selected, will be displayed above the SET PTY button. Once PTY has been programmed, press SEEK or SCAN to initiate a search up or down the frequency. The search will stop when the desired program type has been reached.

**Note:** The system will scan the frequency band three times for the chosen program type. If the program type is unavailable in your reception range, the system will return to the previous station.

6. Press SHOW PRESETS to view the preset stations. To set or change a preset station, press and hold any of the memory presets buttons (1–6) or any of the soft key memory preset buttons on the screen while on the desired station. The new station will replace the previous one recorded.

### *Satellite radio (SAT) if activated*

Once the Satellite Radio feature is activated, your system will have additional features.

1. Ensure that the system is on.
2. Press the RADIO hard button.
3. Select the ‘SAT” tab on the touchscreen to enter satellite radio mode (if activated).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Press ‘Show Options’ to select from:

**Sat 123:** You will be able to access three different Satellite Radio modes, SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3.




**Scan:** Press to hear a brief sampling of satellite radio channels within the currently selected genre. Press again to stop.

**Scan Presets:** Press to hear a brief sampling of all preset channels.

**Channel Guide:** Press to display a list of satellite radio channels sorted by genre and also to skip or lock out certain channels. Select the desired genre and choose a channel by pressing the channel name button. You can then choose to ‘Skip’ or ‘Lock’ a certain channel. A ‘skipped’ channel will not be accessible using the tune knob, scan or seek functions. (To access the skipped channel, select ‘Direct Tune’ and enter the channel number.) A ‘locked’ channel can only be accessed by entering the ‘Channel Guide’ and then entering the PIN.

**Note:** The PIN can be reset by simultaneously pressing and holding presets 1 and 5 while on the PIN entry screen. After approximately five seconds, the system will transition to the Channel Guide screen indicating that the PIN is reset. Once you have reset the PIN, the system will then allow you to set a new PIN.

**Direct Tune:** Press to enter a specific channel using the keypad and go directly to that channel.

**Set Genre:** Press to choose from a list of possible satellite radio genres. Once a genre is chosen and you press SEEK, it will only seek within the selected genre.

**Memo:** The MEMO feature allows you to save a song title and artist to the system. When the saved song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with a pop-up in the lower status bar. You can then choose to tune to the station or to ignore the pop-up. When you are in the MEMO screen, the following options are available:

- **Refresh:** Press to refresh the current artist and title information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- **Song Alert:** Press to store the song information displayed in the Title Field. When the stored song is played in the future, an audio and visual notification will be initiated.
- **Artist Alert:** Press to store the artist information currently displayed in the Artist Field. When that artist is played again, the system will alert you with a pop-up.
- **Alert On/Off:** Press to enable/disable the audio and visual song and artists alerts.

**Show Presets:** Press to display presets at the bottom of the screen.

### *Playing a CD or MP3 disc*

If you press CD and there is not a disc loaded into the system, NO DISC will appear in the status bar and you will not be able to access the CD screen. Insert a disc into the slot and it will begin to play.

You can access the following CD/MP3 options:




**Scan:** Press for a brief sampling of all listenable tracks.

**Compress** (Compression): Press to engage/disengage the compression feature. Compression boosts more quiet music and lowers louder music to minimize the need for volume adjustments.

**Repeat:** Press to engage/disengage the repeat feature. The system will keep playing the same track continually.

**Shuffle:** Press to engage disengage the shuffle feature. The system will play all tracks on the disc randomly.

**Track List:** Available in CD mode only. Press to view a list of tracks on the CD.

**Record:** Available in CD mode only. Press to record and save the CD or any track(s) on the CD to the Jukebox. You can then later access/play the saved tracks/CD.

**Folder mode:** Available in MP3 mode only. Press to activate folder mode. When activated, song play and seeking stays within the current folder.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Folder List:** Available in MP3 mode only. Press to access/view a list of folders on the disc. Select the root folder (if available). You may then select from all possible folders on the disc.

⏮ : Press to access the previous track. Press and hold to reverse in the current track.

▶ / ❙❙ (Play/Pause) : Press to play or pause the current track.

⏭ : Press to access the next track. Press and hold to advance within the current track.

Press ◀ **SEEK** ▶ hard button to listen to the next ( ▶ ) or previous ( ◀ ) track.

***Playing a DVD in the system***

1. Ensure that the vehicle and the system are on and that the vehicle is in P (Park). This will allow you to be able to view and hear the DVD. If the vehicle is moving, you will only be able to hear the audio.
2. Insert a DVD into the system, label side up. The system will automatically go into DVD mode.

You can then select any of the following options on the touchscreen:




⏮ : Press to access the previous chapter. Press and hold to reverse in the current chapter.

▶ / ❙❙ (Play/Pause) : Press to play or pause the DVD.

⏭ : Press to access the next chapter. Press and hold to advance within the current chapter.

■ (Stop): Press to stop the current track.

**Title:** Goes to the main title screen stored on the disc.

**Menu:** Goes to the main menu of the disc.

**Cursor controls:** Use these controls to navigate to the desired menu selections.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Search:** Press to select and go to a specific title or chapter using the keypad.

**Settings:** Allows you to adjust the certain settings of the DVD player, such as:

- **Video Display Settings:** Press to adjust the brightness and contrast. You can also choose to return to the default settings by pressing 'Restore Default'.
- **Audio Language:** Press to select which language you would like the DVD to display.
- **Subtitle Display:** Press to turn subtitles on/off.
- **Subtitle Language:** Press to select in which language you would like the subtitles to appear.
- **Aspect Ratio:** Press to select from wide, full, normal and cinema display.
- **Angle Mark Notification:** Some DVD discs may have more viewing angles from which to select. Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. This is disc dependent feature.

**Note:** Some of the above settings are DVD dependent and availability/operation will vary among DVDs.

Dolby® noise reduction is manufactured under license from Dolby® Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "Dolby®" and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby® Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

During DVD play, you can also touch the screen to access the 'virtual remote' which will allow you to 'Move controls' on the screen as well as use the cursor controls, 'Enter' and 'Return' to navigate and make selections within the menus.




### *Jukebox*

Your mobile media system has a Jukebox which allows you to save desired tracks or CDs to the hard drive for later access. The hard drive can store up to 10 GB* (164 hours; approximately 2,472 tracks) of music. The system contains a Gracenote® media database that allows for





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

display of song title, album title, and album cover art. After saving music to the hard drive, you can access and play your music by specific tracks, artists, albums or genres. You can even choose to create and access your own playlists.

***Note:** 1 GB equals one billion bytes (1,000,000,000B).

### *Recording (saving) music to your jukebox*

1. Ensure that the system is on.
2. Insert a CD into the system. The CD tab will appear.
3. Select 'Record' on the touchscreen.




4. Select either individual tracks or press 'Select All' to record the entire CD. **Note:** The system will default to selecting all tracks if none are selected.
5. Press 'Start Recording'. The progress will show at the bottom of the screen.




When the recording process is finished, the system will save your track(s) / CD to the Jukebox.

**Note:** If you are not actively listening to the disc being recorded, the record rate is much quicker (as fast as five minutes).

### *Accessing the music in your jukebox*

Once you have saved music to your jukebox, you can then choose several ways to play your favorite music. To access:

1. Press the MEDIA hard button.






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Select the ‘Jukebox’ tab on the touchscreen. You can then select from the following options:




**Scan:** Press for a brief sampling of the currently selected CD, playlist, genre, etc. Press again to disengage.

**Repeat:** Press to repeat the current CD, playlist, etc. Press again to disengage.

**Shuffle:** Press to shuffle all the tracks on the current CD, playlist, etc. in random order. Press again to disengage.

**Music library:** Press to access all of your saved music. You can choose to view/play the material in the following ways:

- **Play all tracks:** Select to play all tracks saved in the jukebox.
- **Playlist:** Select to play your own playlist.
- **Play genre:** Select to have the system play only music from a specific genre.
- **Play artist:** Select to have the system play only music by a specific artist.
- **Play album:** Select to have the system play only music from a specific album.

**Options:** Select to view your other options:

- **Edit Playlists:** Select to edit your playlists.
- **Edit Music Library Contents:** Select to make changes to the content in your music library.
- **Update Album Information from CD Database:** Select to update the residing album information from the Gracenote® database if a recent software update was performed.
- **Hard Disk Drive Information:** Select to access the system’s hard drive disc information such as used/free space and total capacity.
- **CD Database Information:** Select to access the CD database information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Creating a playlist*

1. Press the MEDIA hard button.
2. Select the ‘Jukebox’ tab on the touchscreen.
3. Select ‘Options’.
4. Select ‘Edit Playlists’.
5. Select which playlist you would like to create.
6. Select which category you would like to access from your saved music. For example, say you chose one saved album from which to select songs.
7. Select the desired songs and then press ‘Add’.

The system will show you your currently selected songs. You can choose to add more tracks to your playlist, sort the playlist, delete the playlist or to edit the name of the playlist.

8. When you are done making any adjustment to the playlist, select ‘Edit Name’ to rename your playlist.

You can then access your playlist by that name.

### *User device*

Your vehicle is equipped with SYNC®. Press the ’User Device’ tab to access your SYNC® media options. For more information, please refer to the *SYNC® media features* chapter in your *SYNC®* supplement.




### *Rear DVD interaction (if equipped)*

Your mobile media system allows you to access the Family Entertainment DVD System (if equipped) as well as perform basic functions. To access:

1. Press the MEDIA hard button.
2. Select the ‘Rear DVD’ tab on the touchscreen. You may now select from the following options:

⏮ : Press to access the previous track. Press and hold to reverse in the current track.

⏭ : Press to access the next track. Press and hold to advance within the current track.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

▶/❚❚ (Play/Pause): Press to play or pause the current track.

### *Rear Zone (if equipped)*

This screen allows front seat passengers to select/listen to a different audio/video source than the back seat passengers. The only restriction is that the front and back seat passengers cannot both listen to a different frequency band (AM/FM1/FM2). The frequency band selected by the driver is the band accessible by the rear passenger. To access:

1. Ensure that the mobile media system is on.
2. Press the MEDIA or RADIO hard button.
3. Select the 'Rear Zone' tab on the touchscreen.

The screen will show you the selected playing media of the different headsets (A and B). To make adjustments, ensure that the correct headset (A or B) is highlighted. The appropriate controls will appear to allow you to make adjustments to your current playing media.




- ◀◀ (Reverse): Press for reverse play.
- ▶/❚❚ (Play/Pause): Press to play or pause the DVD.
- ▶▶ (Fast forward): Press for advance play.

**SEEK:** You may press the SEEK hard button for the next (▲) or previous (▼) chapter.

- **Media:** Press to select the desired media in the selected headset (A or B).
- **Rear Controls Enabled/Disabled:** Press to turn the Rear Controls (if equipped) on/off.
- **Headphones On/Off:** Press to turn the headphones on/off.

### Rear zone/climate control

Your mobile media system allows you to access and make adjustments to the front and rear zone climate controls.
To access, press the CLIMATE hard button. Refer to the *Climate Controls* chapter for further information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

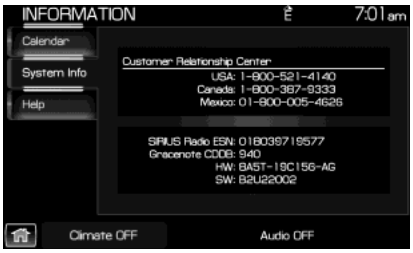
### Calendar




- Press the I button and then select the ‘Calendar’ tab.
  You can then select which month you would like to view by pressing ◀ / ▶ or you can also select ‘Go to Today’.
- You are able to view calendars from one previous year and the next 10 years.

**Note:** Not all tab selections shown here will be available in all markets. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

### *System information*




- Press the I hard button ( ***i*** ) and then select the ‘System Information’ tab on the touchscreen.

In this screen you can view the following options:

- Phone number for your Customer Service Center
- Current SIRIUS Radio ESN

### *Help*

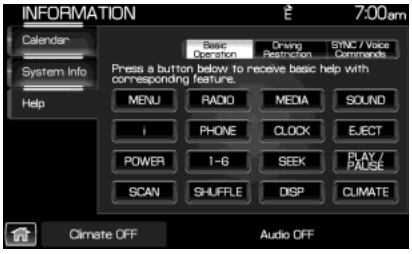
The Help screen allows you to view basic information about controls and driving restrictions as well as traffic legend information and basic voice commands available in various modes. To access:

- Press the I hard button ( ***i*** ) and then select the ‘Help’ tab.

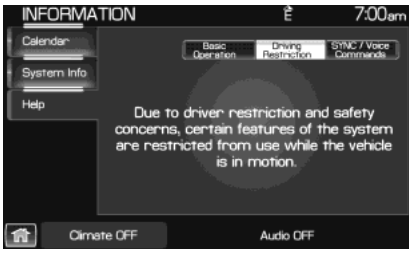


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

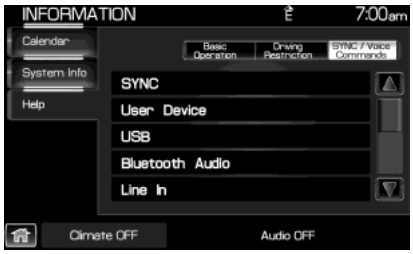
Select ‘Basic Operation’ at the top of the screen to view the hard buttons on your mobile media system. Press the desired icon to view the button description.




Select ‘Driving Restriction’ at the top of the screen to view the system’s driving restriction.




Select ‘SYNC Voice Commands’ at the top of the screen. When selected, the system will show you a brief listing of possible voice commands in that specific mode.








Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Sound features

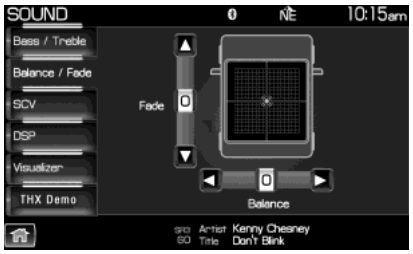
The sound menu allows you to access and adjust settings such as Bass, Treble, Fade, Balance, Digital Signal Processing (DSP), Speed compensated volume (SCV) and the visualizer. To access:

1. Press the SOUND hard button.
2. Press the appropriate tab to select from:

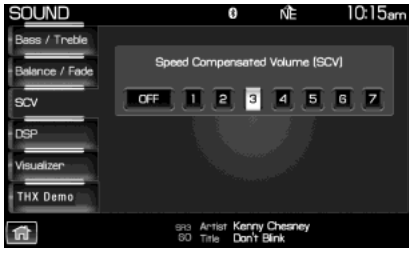
**Bass/Treble:** Press + to increase or — to decrease the levels.




**Balance/Fade:** Press to adjust the sound between the left and right speakers (Balance) and to adjust the sound to the front and rear speakers (Fade).



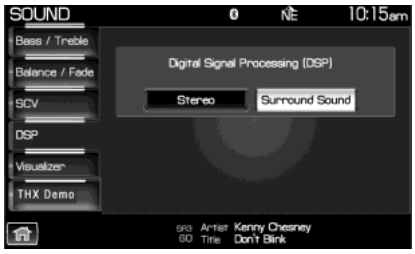

**SCV** (Speed compensated volume): With this feature on, the radio volume changes automatically with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Select a level of compensation between 1 and 7 by pressing the corresponding button.






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**DSP** (Digital Signal Processing): Depending on your option package, you may either select from ‘Stereo’ or ‘Surround Sound’.




Or, you may choose to optimize the sound quality for ‘All Seats’, ‘Driver Seat’ or ‘Rear Seat’.




**Visualizer:** Press to turn the audio visualizer display on or off.

**Note:** Turning the visualizer setting to off will not remove the visualizer on the home screen. You will need to select a different view in order to remove the visualizer.




**THX Demo (if equipped):** Select this tab to activate the THX audio demonstration. You may press “X” to stop the demonstration.






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Ordering Gracenote update DVDs

If you wish to order an updated DVD, please contact Ford Customer Service.

- In USA: 1 (800) 392–3673
- In Canada: 1 (800) 565–3673.
- In Mexico: 1 (800) 719–8466

#### *System Software Updates*

Updates for the Gracenote database (CDDB) that contain CD song/artist/title/album art are available. There is no charge for the data, however, there is a nominal shipping and materials fee. Mapping updates will be available yearly. Gracenote database (CDDB) database updates are complimentary when a map update is purchased.

#### *FCC Compliance*

Changes or modifications not approved by Ford Lincoln Mercury could void user's authority to operate the equipment. This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits with the Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

#### *Gracenote copyright*

CD and music — related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright ©2000–2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000–2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the ″Powered by Gracenote″ logo are trademarks of Gracenote.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Gracenote End User License Agreement (EULA)*

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 (“Gracenote”).

The software from Gracenote (the “Gracenote Software”) enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information (“Gracenote Data”) from online servers (“Gracenote Servers”), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote’s providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote (“Gracenote Content”), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company’s own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS." NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007

### *System limitations*

**Cold temperature start:** When operating the system below 32°F (0°C), the display screen requires a 2–3 minutes warm-up time to achieve maximum brightness.

### *Cleaning the touchscreen*

Clean the touchscreen with a clean soft cloth such as one used for cleaning glasses. If dirt or finger prints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour/spray alcohol onto the touchscreen. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Frequently asked questions (FAQs)*

**How do I turn off the system?**

Press and hold the volume control for at least three seconds.

**How do I recover after accidental language re-set?**

1. Press the MENU hard button.
2. Select the 'Feedback settings'/Retour/Reaccion tab on the touchscreen.
3. Press the 'English'/Anglais/Ingles button to reset language to English.
4. Press the 'Spanish'/Espanol/Espanol button to reset language to Spanish.
5. Press the 'French'/Francais/Frances button to reset language to French.

Or, you can also turn vehicle off to restart system. Then from the DISCLAIMER screen, select the desired language before pressing 'Agree'.

### *Troubleshooting*

| Symptoms | Possible Cause | Action |
|---|---|---|
| Focus Error | System unable to play reproduced disc. | Contact your authorized dealer. |
| Bad Disc | Disc was inserted upside down or the system is unable to read the information in the disc. | The mechanism will automatically eject disc. |
| Track Error | The system is unable to reproduce a corrupt MP3 file. | The system will skip the corrupted track. |
| Invalid Disc Detected | Dirty CD/DVD or unsupported format | Wipe the CD/DVD with a dry, soft cloth from the center to the outer edge of the disc. |
| Error. PINs did not match. Please re-enter. (Popup window) | A different PIN was entered to unlock the system for valet mode. | Press OK and try entering PIN again. If unable, contact your authorized dealer. |
| Invalid PIN. Please Re-enter. (Popup window) | System does not recognize PIN as valid. | Press OK and enter different PIN to lock the system. |





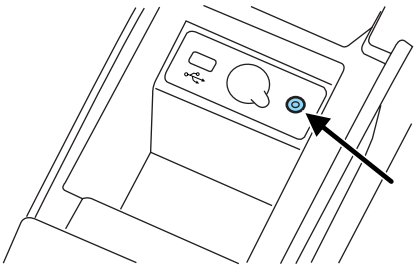
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Audio system–Navigation system based (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with the navigation system, it will have an integrated navigation/audio system. See the *Navigation system* supplement for operating instructions on using this audio system.

### Auxiliary input jack (Line in)

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.



The Auxiliary Input Jack provides a way to connect your portable music player to the in-vehicle audio system. This allows the audio from a portable music player to be played through the vehicle speakers with high fidelity. To achieve optimal performance, please observe the following instructions when attaching your portable music device to the audio system.
If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* section in the *Audio features* chapter of your *Navigation system* supplement.

**Required equipment:**

1. Any portable music player designed to be used with headphones
2. An audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8 in. (3.5 mm) connectors at each end

**To play your portable music player using the auxiliary input jack:**

1. Begin with the vehicle parked and the radio turned off.
2. Ensure that the battery in your portable music player is new or fully charged and that the device is turned off.
3. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end of the audio extension cable to the AIJ in your vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Turn the radio on, using either a tuned FM station or a CD loaded into the system. Adjust the volume to a comfortable listening level.

5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to 1/2 the volume.

6. Press AUX on the vehicle radio repeatedly until LINE, LINE IN or SYNC LINE IN appears in the display.
You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.

7. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

**Troubleshooting:**

1. Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. Line level outputs are intended for connection to a home stereo and are not compatible with the AIJ. The AIJ will only work correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.

2. Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio in your audio system as this will cause distortion and will reduce sound quality. Many portable music players have different output levels, so not all players should be set at the same levels. Some players will sound best at full volume and others will need to be set at a lower volume.

3. If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problems persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable music player.

4. The portable music player must be controlled in the same manner when it is used with headphones as the AIJ does not provide control (play, pause, etc.) over the attached portable music player.

5. For safety reasons, connecting or adjusting the settings on your portable music player should not be attempted while the vehicle is moving. Also, the portable music player should be stored in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.

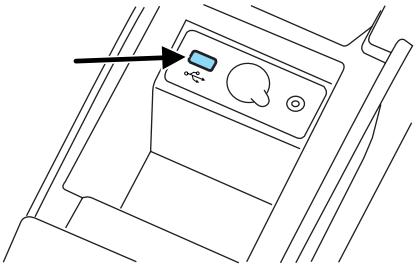


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### USB port

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Your vehicle is equipped with a USB port inside your center console. This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, and also to charge devices if they support this feature. For further information on this feature, refer to *Accessing and using your USB port* in the *SYNC®* supplement or *Navigation system* supplement.



## GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

**Radio frequencies:**

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM: 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM: 87.7, 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

**Radio reception factors:**

There are three factors that can affect radio reception:

- Distance/strength: The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**CD/CD player care**

Do:

- Handle discs by their edges only. (Never touch the playing surface).
- Inspect discs before playing.
- Clean only with an approved CD cleaner.



- Wipe discs from the center out.

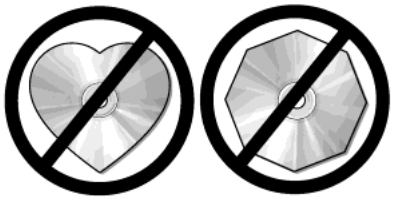


Don't:

- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Clean using a circular motion.

**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.**

**Do not use any irregular shaped CDs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.**





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



**CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**

### Audio system warranty and service

Refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

### MP3 track and folder structure

Your MP3 system recognizes MP3 individual tracks and folder structure as follows:

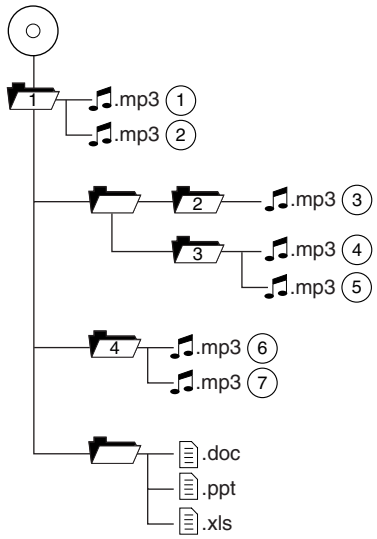
- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode. For more information on track and folder mode, refer to *Sample MP3 structure* in the following section.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255.
  **Note:** The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders will help with navigation through the disc files.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Sample MP3 structure

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system will read the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension will be played. Other files will be ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in vehicle system.




In track mode, the system will display and play the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files will be played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system will only play the .mp3 files in the current folder.

### Satellite radio (if activated)

**SIRIUS satellite radio service:** SIRIUS® Satellite Radio is a subscription based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory installed SIRIUS® satellite radio system includes: hardware and a limited subscription term which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle and an online media player providing access to all SIRIUS® music channels over the internet. Please contact SIRIUS® at 1–888–539–7474 for extended subscription terms as a service fee is required in order to receive SIRIUS® service. Refer to your authorized dealer for availability.

For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS® satellite radio channels, visit www.sirius.com in the United States, www.sirius-canada.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS® at 1–888–539–7474.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Satellite radio reception factors:** Your satellite radio antenna is located on the roof of your vehicle as this provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky. Factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance are:

- Antenna Obstructions: For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a ground based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in an audio mute.

You will hear an audio mute when there is a satellite radio signal interference. Your display may show ACQUIRING . . . to indicate the interference.

**Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN):** When communicating with SIRIUS®, you will need to give your Satellite Radio ESN Number. This 12 digit Satellite Serial Number is needed to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. The ESN is found on the System Information Screen (SR ESN:XXXXXXXXXXXX). Press the I hard button ( *i* ) and select the 'System Info' tab on the touchscreen.

**Note:** SIRIUS® reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Radio Display | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| ACQUIRING | Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel. | No action required. This message should disappear shortly. |
| SAT FAULT | Internal module or system failure present. | If this message does not clear within a short period of time, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service. |
| INVALID CHANNEL | Channel no longer available. | This previously available channel is no longer available. Tune to another channel. If the channel was one of your presets, you may choose another channel for that preset button. |
| UNSUBSCRIBED CHANNEL | Subscription not available for this channel. | Contact SIRIUS at 1–888–539–7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel. |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Radio Display | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| NO SIGNAL | Loss of signal from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to the vehicle antenna. | You are in a location that is blocking the SIRIUS signal (i.e., tunnel, under an overpass, dense foliage, etc). The system is working properly. When you move into an open area, the signal should return. |
| UPDATING | Update of channel programming in progress. | No action required. The process may take up to three minutes. |
| CALL SIRIUS 1–888–539–7474 | Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS Satellite Radio. | Call SIRIUS at 1–888–539–7474 to re-activate or resolve subscription issues. |

## FAMILY ENTERTAINMENT DVD SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) which allows you to listen to audio CDs, MP3 discs, watch DVDs and to plug in and play a variety of standard video game systems. The headrest-mounted DVD players are capable of playing standard DVDs, CDs, MP3s and are compatible with Video CD, HDCD, Hybrid SACD (play CD layer only), SVCD, DVD-video, JPEGs, up to MPEG-4 files, MP3 files and WMA media. Please review this material to become familiar with the FES features and controls as well as the very important safety information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Quick start

Your family entertainment system includes two headrest-mounted DVD player/screens, two sets of wireless infrared (IR) headphones and a wireless infrared (IR) remote control capable of controlling either DVD player. Both DVD players are capable of playing their own independent media, or they can both watch the same media.

When in single play mode, the headrest video sources that have been selected at each headrest will play through the speakers, but no audio is available through the headphones.

#### *To play a DVD*

1. Insert a DVD into the system, label side facing the rear passengers. The disc slot indicator lights will illuminate. The system will automatically load the disc and it will begin to play. LOADING will appear in the screen.

2. If there is already a disc in the system, press the power button on the DVD system and then press ▶ (Play) to begin to play the disc.

3. Use the bezel controls to play ( ▶ ) pause ( ⏸ ), stop ( ■ ), or eject ( ⏏ ) a DVD.

Press ⏮ / ⏭ to access the previous/next chapter. Press and hold for a fast reverse/forward search.

**Note:** The system goes into dual play mode when it is turned on. Audio from the DVD system will not play over the rear two speakers until dual play mode is turned off. When dual play mode is turned on, the audio sound plays over the front two speakers until dual play mode is turned off.

**Note:** Each headrest monitor is labeled with an identifier (either A or B) found in the upper right corner of the system.

**To watch a DVD playing in the other headrest system:** Press MEDIA repeatedly until the desired system (Monitor A or Monitor B) appears in the display.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *To play a CD or MP3 disc*

The DVD system can play audio CDs, CD-R and CD-R/W, CD-ROM. To ensure proper disc operation, check the disc for finger prints and scratches. Clean the disc with a soft cloth, wiping from the center to the edge.



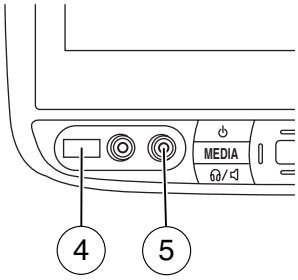

1. Insert a disc into the system, label side facing the rear passengers. The disc slot indicator lights will illuminate. The system will automatically load the disc and it will begin to play. (If it is an MP3, the MP3 audio disc screen will display and allow you to access the folders and files.) The folder, track and elapsed time will appear in the status bar. The screen will list the title, album and file name. Press the arrow controls on the headrest DVD system to scroll through the folders. When the desired folder is highlighted, press SEL to confirm the selection.

2. If there is already a disc in the system, press the power button on the DVD system and then press ▶ (Play) to begin to play the disc.

### *To play an auxiliary source through the DVD system*

The DVD system can be used to connect and play auxiliary electronic devices (game systems, personal camcorders, video cassette recorders, etc) and to connect to and access certain files through your USB port.

1. On the front of each monitor, located behind the left trim cover panel, is the headphone input jack (5). This headphone will listen to the media selected through that monitor. When you need to make any adjustments to the media, volume, etc., ensure that the monitor-A source is highlighted.

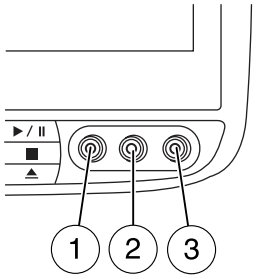





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- USB port (4): To access, ensure that the monitor is already selected as the media source (Monitor A or Monitor B.) Then, plug in your flash/thumb drive and it will automatically begin to play. The system will try to play whatever file it comes to first (slideshow of pictures, etc). If it is a supported file type, it will play. If it is not supported, CAN'T PLAY will appear in the monitor. Scroll through the contents on the rest of the drive using the arrow keys on the DVD headrest or remote. Press SEL to confirm a selection. Each headrest system automatically recognizes the audio and video files that are stored and provides a menu from which to choose the desired selection.
- Wired headphone jack (5): Use for dual play mode

2. Connect an auxiliary audio/video source (game systems, personal camcorders, video cassette recorders, etc.) by connecting RCA cords (not included) to the RCA jacks behind the cover panels on the right corner of the system.



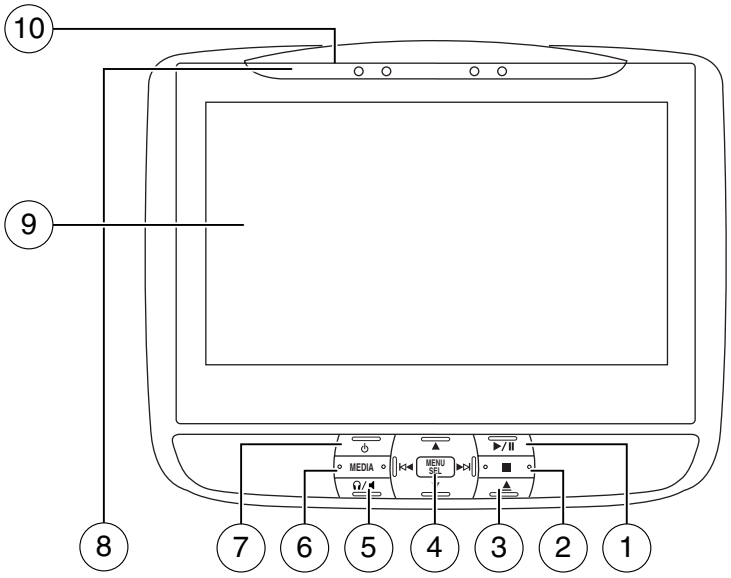

- Yellow (1) — video input
- White (2) — left channel audio input
- Red (3) — right channel audio input

3. Whatever is plugged in will automatically begin to play on your screen. If your auxiliary source does not have a video signal, or if the DVD system does not detect a video signal from the auxiliary source, the screen will remain black.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### DVD player controls




1. ▶ / ❙❙ (Play/Pause): Press to play or pause a CD, DVD or flash/thumb drive track.
2. ■ (Stop): Press to stop the current DVD, CD/MP3, or flash/thumb drive track.
3. ⏏ (Eject): Press to eject a disc from the DVD system.
4. **MENU:** When playing a DVD, press MENU to enter the DVD disc (root) menu (if available). Press again to exit and return to the movie.
**SEL:** Press to confirm the current selection that has been highlighted through the use of the cursor controls.

**Cursor controls:** Use to navigate through selections when in any menu. When not in a menu, you can also use them for the following features:

- ▲ / ▼ Use to scroll through menu sources.
- ⏭ (Fast forward/next): Press to access the next track or chapter. Press and hold to activate fast forward mode (2x, 4x, 8x, 16x or 32x).
- ⏮ (Fast reverse/previous): Press to access the previous track or chapter. Press and hold to activate fast reverse within a disc. Press ▶ (Play) to resume normal playback speed and volume.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. / (Headphones/Speakers): Press to activate dual play mode on either headrest system. During dual play mode, the following happens:
**a.** Rear speakers turn off
**b.** Headphones become active on both headrest systems.
**c.** Media sources become available through the DVD systems.
**Note:** If the system is in dual play mode, you must press the / (Headphones/Speakers) button on both headrest systems in order to return to single play. For more information, please refer to *Single play/Dual play* later in this section.

6. **MEDIA for Monitor A:** In Dual Play mode, press MEDIA repeatedly to select from the possible media sources: (Monitor A, Monitor B, AM, FM1, FM2, SR1, SR2, SR3 (satellite radio, equipped), Disc, Jukebox (if equipped) SYNC® (if equipped). The selected media type will display on the screen. When Monitor A is chosen, you can also use the auxiliary inputs and the USB port on the headrest system.
**MEDIA for Monitor B:** In Dual Play mode, press MEDIA repeatedly to select from the possible media sources: (Monitor A, Monitor B). The selected media type will display on the screen. When Monitor B is chosen, you can also use the auxiliary inputs and USB port on the headrest system.
For further information, please refer to *Single play/Dual play.* later in this section.
**Note:** Each headrest monitor is labeled with an identifier (either A or B) found in the upper right corner of the system.

7. **(On/Off):** Press to turn the system on/off. Power for headrest A is separate from headrest B.
**Note:** This also disables dual play. When both headrest systems are turned off, the system will return to single play mode.

8. **Infrared receiver (IR):** System sensor which reads the signals from the remote control and also sends audio signals to the infrared wireless headphones.

9. **LCD screen:** This seven inch liquid crystal display (LCD) screen can be adjusted for easier viewing by children. Pull the top of the screen panel toward the viewer at the IR receiver/transmitter cover for a better viewing angle. The screen is hinged at the bottom and pivots to face downward. Push the screen back in place until it latches to return it to a stowed position.
**Note:** Ensure that you do not pull the LCD screen too far forward as it can cause damage.

10. **CD/DVD slot:** Insert the disc, label side facing the rear passengers.



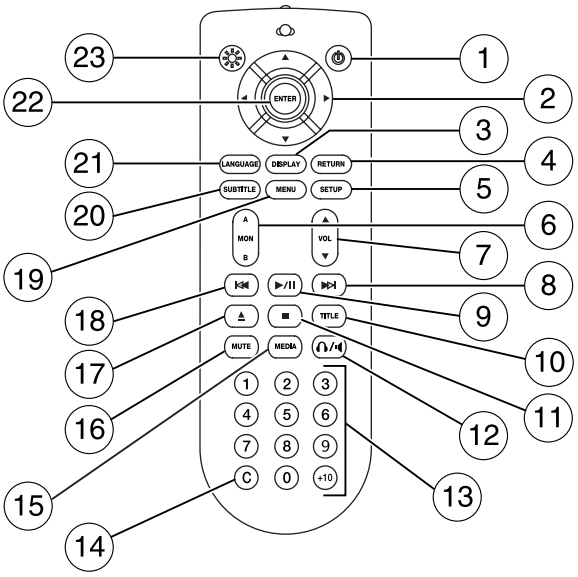


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Remote control

Unless otherwise stated, all operations can be carried out with the remote control. Always point the remote control directly at the player. Ensure that there are no obstructions between the remote and player. Press the MON A B control to select either Monitor A or Monitor B.
**Note:** Each headrest monitor is labeled with an identifier (either A or B) found in the upper right corner of the system.

**Note:** Use the remote to adjust the volume levels for wired headphones for headrest media sources only (DVD, USB port and auxiliary inputs). To adjust the volume levels on the infrared wireless headphones (provided with your system), use the rotary volume control on the side of the headphones.




1. **(On/off):** Press to turn each monitor/headrest system on or off.

2. **Cursor controls:** Use in various active menus to advance the cursor up/down/left/right. When not in a menu, the left and right cursor controls decrease and increase the display brightness.

3. **DISPLAY:** Press to access the on-screen display of title track, chapter and time elapsed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. **RETURN:** Press to return to the previous menu screen.

5. **SETUP**: Press to access the setup menu for each monitor. Refer to *Setup Menu* later in this section for more information.

6. **MON A/B:** Press to select either monitor A or monitor B to be controlled by the remote control.

7. **VOL (Volume):** When in Dual Play only, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume for the wired headphones for headrest media sources only (DVD, USB port and auxiliary inputs). (Wireless headphone volume is controlled with the rotary dial on the right ear piece.)

8. **Fast Forward/Next:** In DVD mode, press and hold for a quick advance within the DVD. Press and release to advance to the next chapter. In CD/MP3 mode, press to access the next track. When using a flash/thumb drive, press to access the next track.

9. **Play/Pause:** Press to play or pause a DVD, disc or flash/thumb drive track.

10. **TITLE:** Press to access the on-screen display of the root DVD disc menu.

11. **STOP:** Press to stop the current DVD, disc or flash/thumb drive track.

12. / **Speaker/Headphone** (Single/Dual Play): Press to switch between Single Play (same media playing through all speakers) and Dual Play (headphone mode, the rear speakers are muted). You can also press the 2 and 4 memory presets on the audio system at the same time to perform the same function.
**Note:** Whenever either headrest system presses this button, both systems will automatically go into dual play mode. In order to return to single play mode, you must press this button on both headrest systems.

13. **Numeric Keypad:** Use the numeric controls to enter in a specific CD/MP3 track or DVD chapter to be played.

14. **C (Cancel):** Press to cancel/clear the numeric input (i.e. chapter number).

15. **MEDIA for Monitor A:** In Dual Play mode, press MEDIA repeatedly to select from the possible media sources: (Monitor A, Monitor B, AM, FM1, FM2, SR1, SR2, SR3 (satellite radio, equipped), Disc, Jukebox (if equipped) SYNC® (if equipped). The selected media type will display on the screen. When Monitor A is chosen, you can also use the auxiliary inputs and the USB port on the headrest system.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**MEDIA for Monitor B:** In Dual Play mode, press MEDIA repeatedly to select from the possible media sources: (Monitor A, Monitor B). The selected media type will display on the screen. When Monitor B is chosen, you can also use the auxiliary inputs and USB port on the headrest system.
For further information, please refer to *Single play/Dual play.* later in this section.
**Note:** Each headrest monitor is labeled with an identifier (either A or B) found in the upper right corner of the system.

16. **MUTE:** Press to mute the volume of the active media source. (headphone and speakers, where applicable.) Press again to restore volume.

17. **EJECT:** Press to eject a disc from the system. OPEN will display on the screen.

18. **Fast reverse/Previous:** When a DVD is playing, press and hold for a quick reverse within the DVD. Press and release for the previous chapter. Press PLAY to resume normal playback speed and volume.
In CD/MP3 mode, press to access the previous track. When using a flash/thumb drive, press to access the next track.

19. **MENU:** Press to access the DVD or CD disc menu for selections. Press again to return to DVD play.
**Note:** For certain discs, you may need to press ENTER to return to DVD play.

20. **SUBTITLE** (DVD dependent): Press to turn the subtitle feature ON or OFF.

21. **LANGUAGE** (DVD dependent): Press to select the desired language.

22. **ENTER:** Press to select the highlighted menu option.

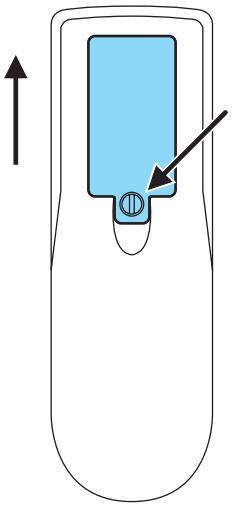
23. **ILLUMINATION**: Press to illuminate the remote control and backlight all of the buttons for night use.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Battery replacement*

Batteries are supplied with the remote control unit. Since all batteries have a limited shelf life, replace them when the unit fails to control the DVD player.



Remove the screw and unlatch the battery cover to access the batteries.

The remote control unit uses two AAA batteries which are supplied with the unit.

## Headphones

### *Wireless headphones*

**WARNING:** The driver should never use the headphones while driving the vehicle. Using headphones may prevent the driver from hearing audible warnings such as horns or emergency sirens, which could result in a crash causing serious injury. Give your full attention to driving and to the road.

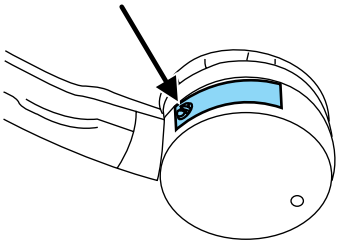
Your FES system is equipped with two sets of battery powered, infrared wireless headphones. Two AAA batteries are needed to operate the headphones. (Batteries are included.)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

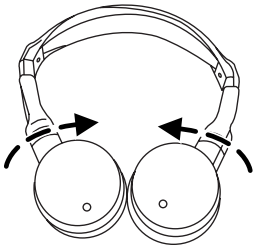
Additional infrared wireless headphones may be purchased for use with the system. Also, wired headphones may be purchased and plugged in where indicated on the left and right hand sides of the system. Refer to *Wired Headphones* following.

**To install the batteries,** remove the screw on the cover and remove the cover. Then, gently lift the top of the cover away from the housing to expose the battery compartment.

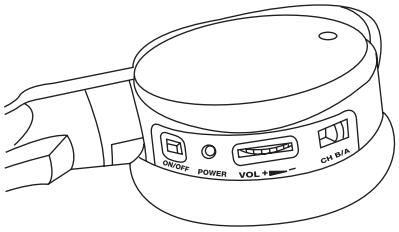


When replacing the batteries, use two new batteries (alkaline recommended) and install them with the correct orientation as indicated in the battery housing. Replace the cover and thread the screw.

**Fold-flat feature:** In addition to headband adjustment, your new wireless headphones will lock into position when being used and they can also fold-flat feature for ease of storage. Simply rotate each earpiece until they lock into position or fold flat.



**To operate the headphones:**




- Press POWER on the ear piece to turn on the headphones. A red indicator light will illuminate indicating the headphones are ON. Press POWER again to turn the headphones off.
- Adjust the headphones to comfortably fit your head using the headband adjustment.
- Select the desired audio source (Channel/Monitor A or B) for each set of wireless headphones by using the A/B selection switch on the ear piece.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Adjust the volume control to the desired listening level.

Ensure that the headphones are turned off when not in use. After approximately one minute of not being in use (no infrared signal is received), the wireless headphones will automatically turn off. They will also turn off after two hours of continuous use as a power save feature. If this happens, simply turn the headphones on again and continue use.

### *Wired headphones*

**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children operate the system while unsupervised. If wired headphones or auxiliary systems are used, children may become entangled in the cords and seriously injure themselves.

**WARNING:** The driver should never use the headphones while driving the vehicle. Using headphones may prevent the driver from hearing audible warnings such as horns or emergency sirens, which could result in a crash causing serious injury. Give your full attention to driving and to the road.

Wired headphone jacks on the FES (Family Entertainment System) are universal so you may purchase and use additional wired headphones for your system. Plug them into the 3.5 mm headphone jack(s) located behind the trim covers on the face of each monitor. These headphones will be active when in Dual Play mode.

To listen to the audio on wired headphones (not included), connect the wired headphones into the monitor headphone jacks. Available wired headphone sources are limited to the sources available to whichever monitor is being listened to. Adjust the volume using the volume control on the DVD system remote control.

## Operation

### *Single play/Dual play*

Your DVD and audio system work together with the infrared headphones and wired headphones (not included) to allow the rear seat passengers to listen to the radio (and other media sources) over the headphones. This enables the front and rear seat passengers to listen to a variety of sources a variety of ways.

**Single Play:** Single play consists of all occupants in the vehicle listening to the same playing media over the front and rear speakers. When the DVD system is on and in single play, the same source will play through all vehicle speakers.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Dual Play:** Dual play is when the rear seat passengers choose to listen to a different playing media than the front seat passengers. With the DVD and rear seat controls turned on, the rear seat passengers may choose to listen to: Monitor A, Monitor B, AM, FM1, FM2 SR1, SR2, SR3 (satellite radio, if equipped), Disc, Jukebox (if equipped), or SYNC® (if equipped). While the front speakers play the chosen selection for the front audio system, the rear seat passengers can listen to another over the headphones. The headphone icon will appear in the display indicating that the headphones are active.

**You can access dual play mode in any of the following ways:**

- If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen system:
  **a.** Ensure that the vehicle ignition is turned on. Inserting a DVD into the system will automatically activate dual play mode.
  **b.** Press the RADIO or MEDIA hard button. Select the 'Rear Zone' tab on the touchscreen and select 'On' for the headphones and 'Enabled' for the rear controls. To return to single zone, select 'Off' for the headphones.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a non-touchscreen system:
  **a.** Press the headphone/speaker ( / ) button on the remote control or DVD system. Press again on both headrest systems to return to single play mode.
  **b.** Press the 2 and 4 memory presets on the radio at the same time. Press again to return to single play mode.

**Note:** If the front seat passengers are listening to the radio, the rear seat passengers can also listen to the radio; however, they will be limited to listening to the same radio channel.

- Once you have entered Dual play mode, the Channel A or Channel B controls on the headphones are now active. Both Channel A and Channel B can be listened to on the wired headphones (not included) or on the infrared (IR) wireless headphones.
- On the wireless headphones, select the Channel A or Channel B buttons on each pair of wireless headphones.
- Press MEDIA to change the audio source for the Channel A or Channel B headphones. (This information will display on the DVD system screen).
  **Note:** Channel B headphones can only listen to either the DVD media, Monitor A or the DVD system auxiliary inputs. Channel A headphones have access to all available media sources.

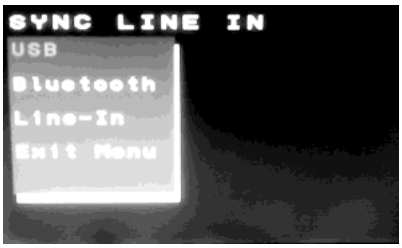


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Radio interaction:** If your vehicle is equipped with a non-touchscreen audio system, you can press AUX on the radio repeatedly until DVD appears in the display. Then, press MENU to access HEADPHONES ON/OFF, REAR ZONE CONTROL ON/OFF and other options. Turn the TUNE control to select ON/OFF for HEADPHONES (ON will activate Dual Play and OFF will activate Single Play). For the REAR ZONE CONTROL, selecting ON will give the rear seat passengers control over the DVD system and selecting OFF will turn off control for the rear seat passengers.

**When accessing radio or satellite radio media sources in dual play mode,** press SEL on the DVD headrest A system when the desired selection appears in the screen and then press ⏮ / ⏭ to reverse/advance through any saved presets.

**When accessing SYNC® in dual play mode,** press SEL on DVD headrest monitor A when SYNC appears on the screen then press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through SYNC® media options of: USB, Bluetooth, Line in (auxiliary audio mode) and Exit.




**Supported USB devices:** To help ensure compatibility, the DVD system has been tested with most brands of flash/thumb devices and most common personal audio players.

### *Setup menu options*

To access the set up menu, first select the desired headrest/monitor system by pressing MON A or MON B. Then press SETUP on the remote control.

**Note:** This is the only way to gain access to the Setup menu options. You cannot access from the monitor headrest controls.

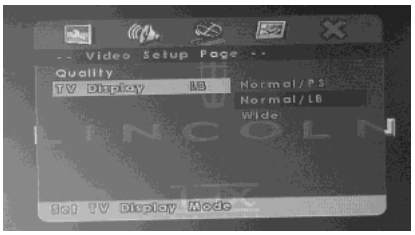
**Note:** On any of the following screens, press ⏮ / ⏭ to access the previous/next menu level.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Aspect ratio (TV display type)*

This screen allows you to select the viewing size and shape of the video displayed on the LCD screen. This is disc dependent feature.
To access:




1. Press SETUP on the remote to access the menu options.
2. Press ◀ /▶ to 'highlight' the monitor icon. (A disc will appear beneath the icon signifying it is the current selection.)
3. Press ▼ to select and enter the TV display menu.
4. When TV display is highlighted, press ▶ to enter the menu.
5. Press ▲ /▼ to select from the following settings:

- **Normal P/S** (Pan and Scan): Displays the wide picture on the screen with a portion of the left and right sides removed.
- **Normal L/B** (Letter-Box): Displays the wide picture with black bands on the upper and lower portions of the screen.
- **Wide:** Displays the wide picture.

6. When the desired selection is highlighted, press ENTER on the remote control to confirm the selection.

### *OSD language*

This screen allows you to select the language you would like for use with the DVD player commands and set-up screens.
To access:




1. Press SETUP on the remote to access the menu options.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Press ◀ /▶ to 'highlight' the monitor icon. (A disc will appear beneath the icon signifying it is the current selection.)

3. Press ▼ to select and enter the OSD language menu.

4. When OSD Lang is highlighted, press ▶ to access the menu.

5. Press ▲ /▼ to select from all available languages.

6. When the desired language is highlighted, press ENTER on the remote to confirm the selection.

**Note:** The default language is English.

### *Angle mark*

This feature allows you to select from different viewing angles that may be found on the disc. This is a disc dependent feature. If the DVD does not have this capability, it will not be available.
**Note:** This is a disc dependent feature.
To access:




1. Press SETUP on the remote to access the menu options.

2. Press ◀ /▶ to 'highlight' the monitor icon. (A disc will appear beneath the icon signifying it is the current selection.)

3. Press ▼ to select and enter the TV display menu.

4. When Angle Mark is highlighted, press ▶ to access the menu.

5. Press ▲ /▼ to select from all available angles.

6. When the desired language is highlighted, press ENTER on the remote to confirm the selection.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Speaker setup*

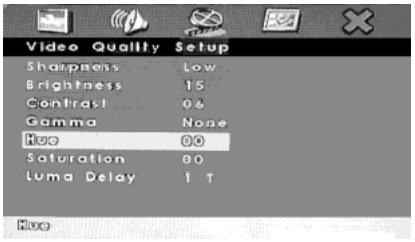
This screen allows you to adjust the audio balance for your speakers. To access:




1. Press SETUP on the remote to access the menu options.
2. Press ◀ /▶ to 'highlight' the speaker icon. (A disc will appear beneath the icon signifying it is the current selection.)
3. Press ▼ to select and enter the Speaker set up menu.
4. When Downmix is highlighted, press ▶ to access the menu.
5. Press ▲ /▼ to select from left/right and stereo.
6. When the desired selection is highlighted, press ENTER on the remote to confirm.

### *Video setup*

The video setup screen allows you to adjust the quality of the video image for each headrest monitor. To access:




1. Press SETUP on the remote to access the menu options.
2. Press ◀ /▶ to 'highlight' the film reel icon. (A disc will appear beneath the icon signifying it is the current selection.)
3. Press ▼ to select and enter the Video setup menu.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Press ▲ /▼ to chose from Sharpness, Brightness, contrast, color (gamma), hue, saturation and luma-delay.

### *General setup — screen exit*

To exit the setup screen:

1. Press ◀ /▶ to 'highlight' the "X" icon. (A disc will appear beneath the icon signifying it is the current selection.)

2. Press ENTER on the remote control.




### *Parental control for the DVD system*

Your Family Entertainment System (FES) allows you to have control over the rear seat controls in a few different ways. The DVD system is automatically activated when the vehicle ignition is on, which allows the rear seat passengers to use the DVD system.

There are two levels of control of the FES buttons. The states are FULL (enabled), or LOCKED (disabled). To change the level of control, press the memory preset controls 3 and 5 simultaneously on the front audio controls. The control level will cycle each time the buttons are pressed simultaneously. The three states are described as:

**FULL** (enabled): The FES has control over the primary (speaker) and secondary (headphone) audio sources.

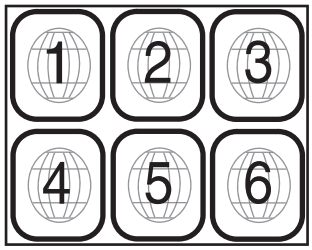
**LOCKED** (disabled): The FES buttons are locked and all FES button presses are ignored by the radio and the FES except for load and eject.

When the DVD system is ON, you can then press the memory preset controls 2 and 4 simultaneously to toggle between Single Play and Dual Play. In Single Play mode, all speakers listen to the same media. In Dual Play mode, rear seat passengers can use the infrared wireless, or wired (not included) headphones to listen to a different playing media than the front seat passengers.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## General information




**Note:** DVDs are formatted by regions. US and Canada systems can only play region 1 DVDs and Mexico systems can only play region 4 DVDs. Systems sold in vehicles targeted for other parts of the world would have different regions. If a playback problem is encountered, please ensure that you are using a disc designed for your vehicle. The region coding can be found stamped on the disc or on the box, and can say 'region-1' or 'region 4', etc. They may also be marked by a numerical symbol.

**Macrovision:** This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

**MP3, MPG, WAV, JPG, WMA, HDCD (and all other file types referenced in this Owner's Guide):** Supply of this product only conveys a license for private, non-commercial use and does not convey a license nor imply any right to use this product in any commercial (i.e. revenue generating) real time broadcasting (terrestrial, satellite, cable and /or any other media) broadcasting/streaming via internet, intranets and/or other networks or in other electronic content distribution systems, such as pay-audio or audio-on-demand applications. An independent license for such use is required. For details, please visit http:// www.mp3licensing.com.

## Safety information

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Entertainment Systems

Read all of the safety and operating instructions before operating the system and retain for future reference.

Do not attempt to service, repair or modify the Family Entertainment System (FES). See your dealer.

Do not insert foreign objects into the DVD compartment.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children operate the system while unsupervised. If wired headphones or auxiliary systems are used, children may become entangled in the cords and seriously injure themselves.

**WARNING:** The front glass on the liquid crystal display (LCD) flip-down screen may break when hit with a hard surface. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with skin, wash immediately with soap and water.

**WARNING:** The driver should not attempt to operate any function of the DVD system while the vehicle is in motion. Give full attention to driving and to the road. Pull off the road in a safe place before inserting or extracting DVDs from the system. A remote control is included in the system to allow the rear seat occupants to operate the FES functions without distracting the driver.

**Do not expose the liquid crystal display (LCD) flip-down screen to direct sunlight or intensive ultraviolet rays for extensive periods of time. Ultraviolet rays deteriorate the liquid crystal.**

Be sure to review User Manuals for video games and video game equipment when used as auxiliary inputs for your Family Entertainment System (FES).

Do not operate video games or video equipment if the power cords and/or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and/or cables where they will not be stepped on or interfere with the operation of seats and/or compartments.

Disconnect video games and video equipment power cords and/or cables when not in use.

Avoid touching auxiliary input jacks with your fingers. Do not blow on them or allow them to get wet or dirty.

Do not clean any part of the DVD player with benzene, lacquer thinner, acetone, or any other solvent.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Federal Communication Commission (FCC) Compliance

Changes or modifications not approved by Ford Lincoln-Mercury could void user's authority to operate the equipment. This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference and radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

### Care and service of the DVD player

#### *Environmental extremes*

DVD players which are subjected to harsh environmental conditions may be damaged or perform at less than maximum capability. To avoid these outcomes, whenever possible avoid exposing your DVD player to:

- extremely hot or cold temperatures.
- direct sunlight.
- high humidity.
- a dusty environment.
- locations where strong magnetic fields are generated.

#### *Temperature extremes*

When the vehicle is parked under direct sunlight or in an extremely cold place for a long period of time, wait until the cabin temperature of the vehicle is at normal temperature before operating the system.

#### *Humidity and moisture condensation*

Moisture in the air will condense in the DVD player under extremely humid conditions or when moving from a cold place to a warm one. Moisture condensation may cause damage to the DVD and/or player. If moisture condensation occurs, do not insert a CD or DVD into the player. If one is already in the player, remove it. Turn the DVD player ON to dry the moisture before inserting a DVD. This could take an hour or more.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Foreign substances*

Exercise care to prevent dirt and foreign objects from entering the DVD player compartment. Be especially careful not to spill liquids of any kind onto the media controls or into the system. If liquid is accidentally spilled onto the system, immediately turn the system OFF and consult a qualified service technician.

### *Cleaning the liquid crystal display (LCD) screen*

Clean the display screen by applying a small amount of water or any ammonia-based household glass cleaner directly to a soft cloth. Rub the screen gently until the dust, dirt or fingerprints are removed. Do not spray the screen directly with water or glass cleaning solvents. Overspray from these fluids could drip down into the internal electronics of the screen and cause damage. Do not apply excessive pressure while cleaning the screen.

### *Cleaning DVD and CD discs*

Inspect all discs for contamination before playing. If necessary, clean discs only with an approved DVD and CD cleaner and wipe from the center out to the edge. Do not use circular motion.

## NAVIGATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a navigation system. Refer to the *Navigation System* supplement for further information.

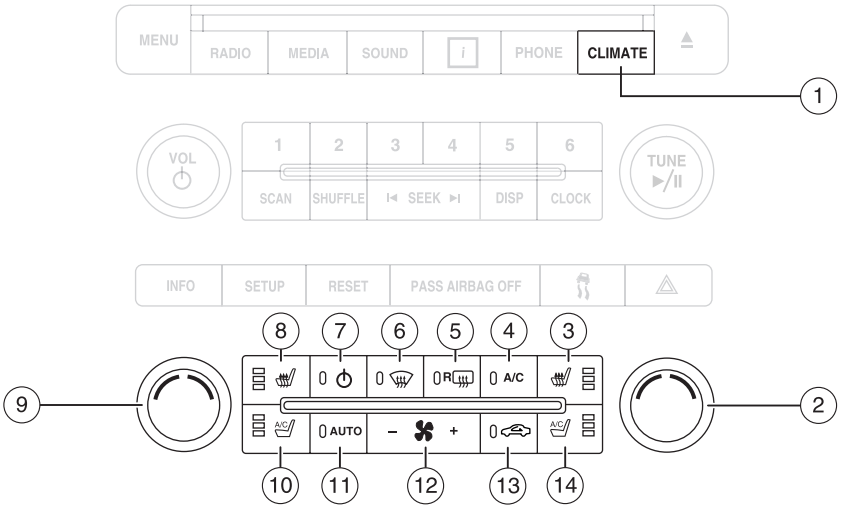
## SYNC®

Your vehicle is equipped with SYNC®, a hands-free communications and entertainment system with special phone and media features. For more information, please refer to the *SYNC®* supplement or to the *SYNC®* section in the *Navigation System* supplement (if equipped).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## DUAL ZONE AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL




Climate system without navigation system shown; with navigation similar.

*Temperature conversion:* To switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius, refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

1. **Climate:** Press to control the climate control system through the touch display screen. See *Touchscreen functions* later in this section.
2. **Passenger temperature:** Press to activate separate passenger temperature control and turn the knob to increase/decrease the air temperature on the passenger side of the vehicle.
3. **Passenger heated seat:** Press to activate. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.
4. **A/C:** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, (defrost) and (floor/defrost).
5. **Rear defroster:** Press to activate/deactivate the rear window defroster. Refer to *Rear window defroster* later in this chapter for more information. This button will also activate the heated mirrors.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. **Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and de-mister vents. Can be used to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging. Press this button again to return to the previous air flow selection.

7. **Power:** Press to activate/deactivate the climate control system. When the system is off, outside air is prevented from entering the vehicle. The climate status in the touchscreen will also be turned off.

8. **Driver heated seat:** Press to activate. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

9. **Driver temperature:** Press to increase/decrease the air temperature on the driver side of the vehicle. This control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when dual zone operation is disengaged.

10. **Driver cooled seat:** Press to activate. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

11. **AUTO:** Press to engage full automatic operation. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system will automatically determine fan speed, airflow location, A/C on or off, and outside or recirculated air, to heat or cool the vehicle to reach the desired temperature.

12. – + **Fan speed control:** Press (- / +) to decrease/increase the fan speed.

13. **Recirculated air:** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in the vehicle. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior of the vehicle when used with A/C and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculated air engages automatically when MAX A/C is selected or can be engaged manually in any airflow mode except (defrost).

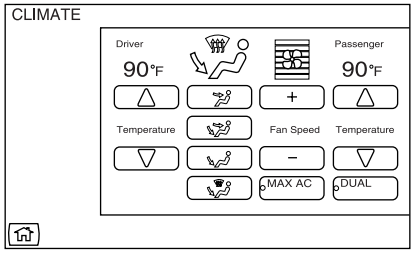
Recirculation may turn off automatically in all airflow selections except MAX A/C.

14. **Passenger cooled seat:** Press to activate. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## TOUCHSCREEN FUNCTIONS




**Temperature**– Press the △ up and ▽ down arrows on the left side of the screen to increase/decrease the airflow temperature for the driver side of the vehicle. This control also adjusts the passenger side temperature when dual zone operation is disengaged.

Press the △ up and ▽ down arrows on the right side of the screen to increase/decrease the airflow temperature for the passenger side of the vehicle.

- - Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.
- - Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, floor vents, rear seat floor vents and de-mister vents.
- - Distributes air through the floor vents, rear seat floor vents.
- - Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, de-mister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging.

  To return to full automatic control, press AUTO on the main climate control bezel.

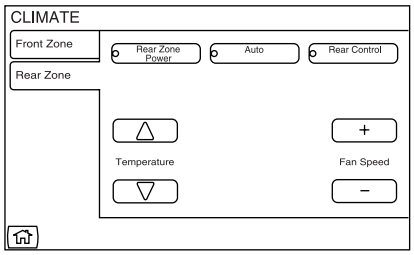
**Fan Speed**– Press + to increase the fan speed and – to decrease fan speed.

**Dual**– Press to activate/deactivate separate driver and passenger temperature controls.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Max A/C**– Distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel vents to cool the vehicle. This re-cooling of the interior air is more economical and efficient. Recirculated air may also help reduce undesirable odors from entering the vehicle. Press MAX A/C again for normal operation.




**Rear Zone Power**– Press to activate/deactivate the rear climate system.

**Auto**– Press to activate auto for the rear climate system. The system will automatically determine fan speed and airflow direction in order to reach and maintain the desired temperature.

**Rear Zone**– Press to activate the touchscreen controls for the rear climate system.

**Rear Control**– Press to allow the rear passengers to control the rear climate system using the rear mounted controls.

**Temperature**– Press up/down to increase/decrease the rear climate temperature.

**Fan Speed**– Press to decrease/increase the fan speed.

### VOICE COMMANDS IN CLIMATE MODE

Please refer to the *Voice commands in climate mode* section of the *Navigation system* supplement for more information on using voice commands with the climate control system.

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle: do not drive with the system off or with recirculated air engaged.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

For maximum cooling performance (MAX A/C): In AUTO mode, press AUTO control and set to desired temperature.

In manual override mode, select or , A/C and recirculated air and set the temperature to 60°F (16°C). Set the fan to the highest speed initially, then adjust to maintain passenger comfort.

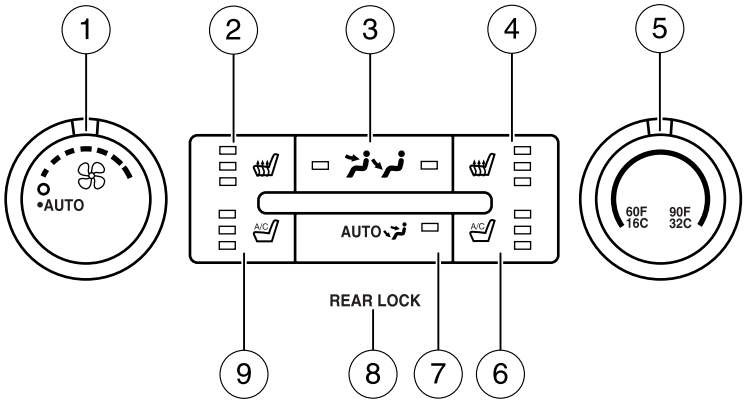
To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2–3 minutes after starting the vehicle or until the vehicle has "aired out."

In extremely cold temperatures, to maximize overall heater performance it is suggested to not operate the auxiliary system (if equipped) until the engine temperature gauge crosses into the normal operating range.

To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select .
2. Press A/C.
3. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan to the highest speed.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents toward the side windows.

### AUXILIARY CLIMATE CONTROL




1. **Fan control:** Turn to select the desired fan speed or choose the following.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- **O Off:** Select to shut the rear climate system off
- **AUTO:** Select to activate automatic control of the fan speed. The system will automatically determine fan speed in order to reach and maintain the desired temperature.

2. **Rear driver side heated seat control (if equipped):** Press to activate. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

3. **Mode selector:** Press repeatedly to select airflow as follows:

- **Vent:** Directs air to the overhead vents of the second and third row seating areas. The left light will be illuminated.
- **Floor:** Directs air to the floor of the second or third row seating areas. The right light will be illuminated.
- **Vent and Floor:** Distributes air to the floor and overhead vents of the second and third row seating areas. Both lights will be illuminated.

4. **Rear passenger side heated seat control (if equipped):** Press to activate. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

5. **Temperature selection:** Turn to increase/decrease the air temperature in the rear of the vehicle.

6. **Rear passenger side cooled seat control (if equipped):** Press to activate. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.

7. **AUTO** : Press to activate automatic control of the airflow direction in the rear of the vehicle. The system will automatically determine the airflow distribution in order to reach and maintain the desired temperature.

8. **REAR LOCK:** Illuminates when the rear (auxiliary) climate system is being controlled by the front controls. The rear (auxiliary) climate controls will not work when this is illuminated.

9. **Rear driver side cooled seat control (if equipped):** Press to activate. Refer to *Heated and cooled seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for more information.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## REAR WINDOW DEFROSTER

The rear defroster control is located on the climate control panel and works to clear the rear window of fog and thin ice.

The ignition must be on to operate the rear window defroster.

The rear defroster turns off automatically after 10 minutes or when the ignition is turned off. To manually turn off the defroster before 10 minutes have passed, press the control again.

**Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.**

## CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter element is designed to reduce the concentration of airborne particles such as dust, spores and pollen in the air being supplied to the interior of the vehicle. The presence of a particulate filter element provides the following benefits:

- Improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- Improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- Protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

**Note:** A cabin air filter must be installed at all times to prevent foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

The access door for the filter is located behind the glove box. For replacement intervals regarding the cabin air filter, see the *scheduled maintenance information*. For more information regarding your filter, see your authorized dealer.



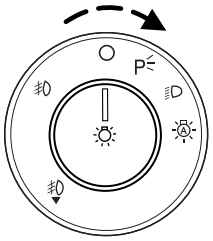
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## HEADLAMP CONTROL

Turns the lamps off.

Turns on the parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

Turns the low beam headlamps on.

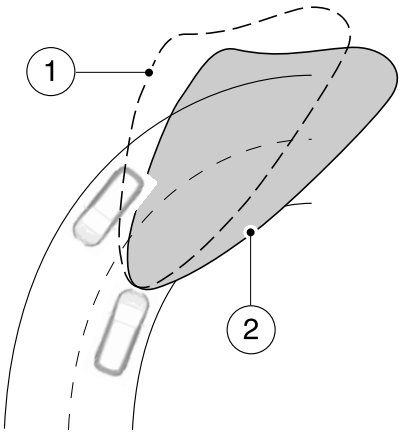


### Adaptive headlamps

The headlamp beams move in the same direction as the steering wheel which provides more visibility when driving around curves.

- Without adaptive headlamps (1)
- With adaptive headlamps (2)

**Note:** The system has a power-up movement check feature. When the vehicle is started, the lamps track left to right, then back to center to alert the driver that the system is working properly. There is a delay of two to five seconds before the adaptive headlamp system will operate when the vehicle is driven, as the system is inactive below 3 mph (5 km/h).

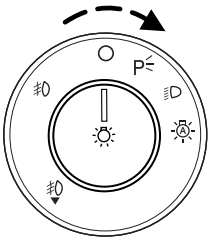







Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Autolamp control



The autolamp system provides light sensitive automatic on/off control of the exterior lights normally controlled by the headlamp control.

- To turn autolamps on, rotate the control clockwise to .
- To turn autolamps off, rotate the control counterclockwise to .

The autolamp system also keeps the lights on for a predetermined amount of time after the ignition switch is turned to off. You can change the amount of time the lamps stay on by using the programming procedure that follows:

**Note:** If the vehicle is equipped with autolamps it will have the *headlamps on with windshield wipers* feature. If the windshield wipers are turned on for a brief period of time, the exterior lamps will turn on with the headlamp control in the Autolamp position.

#### *Autolamps - Programmable exit delay*

Programmable exit delay allows the length of the autolamp exit delay to be changed.

To program the auto lamp exit time delay:

1. Start with the ignition in the off position and the headlamp control in the autolamp position.

2. Turn the headlamp control to off.

3. Turn the ignition switch to on and then back to off.

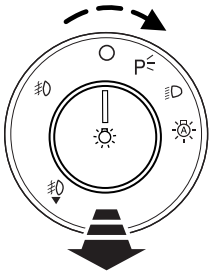
4. Turn the headlamp control to the autolamp position. The headlamps will turn on.

5. Wait the desired amount of time for the exit delay you want (up to three minutes), then turn the headlamps off.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Fog lamp control

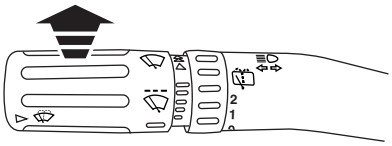


With the ignition on, the fog lamps can be turned on when the headlamp control is pulled toward you and is in any of the following positions:

- Parking lamps
- Low beams
- Autolamps (when active)

The fog lamp indicator light will illuminate when the fog lamps have been turned on. The fog lamps will not operate when the high beams are active.

### High beams



Push the lever toward the instrument panel to activate. Pull the lever towards you to deactivate.

### Auto high beams

During nighttime driving, the automatic high beam system automatically turns on your high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. When it detects an approaching vehicle's headlights or a preceding vehicle's tail lamps, the system turns off the high beams (low beams remain on) before they distract other drivers.

If the vehicle is equipped with automatic high beams, the high beam switch will operate differently depending on the status of the automatic high beam system. Each of the possible operating scenarios are detailed below:

**Scenario 1:**

*Conditions* - The automatic high beam system is set to ON in the message center. The headlamp switch is in (auto lamps). The automatic high beam system has turned the high beams on.

*Operation* - The high beam switch will not perform any function.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Scenario 2:**

*Conditions* - The automatic high beam system is set to ON in the message center. The headlamp switch is in (auto lamps). The automatic high beam system has not turned the high beams on.

*Operation* - The high beam switch can be used to turn the high beams on. They will then remain on until the switch has been returned to the neutral position and the auto high beam system has turned the high beams off.

**Scenario 3:**

*Conditions* - The automatic high beam system is set to ON in the message center. The headlamp switch is in (off), (park lamps), or (on).

*Operation* - The high beam switch can be used to turn the high beams on and off.

**Scenario 4:**

*Conditions* - The automatic high beam system is set to OFF in the message center. The headlamp switch is in (auto lamps), (off), (park lamps), or (on).

*Operation* - The high beam switch can be used to turn the high beams on and off.

**Enabling/disabling auto high beams**

Enabling/disabling and/or checking the status of the automatic high beam system can be performed using the message center. See *Message center* in the *Instrument cluster* chapter.

**Activating high beams**

If there is no traffic in front of the vehicle, the high beams will come on automatically and the light will display in the instrument panel if the following are true:

- The headlamp control is in auto lamp mode.
- Fog lamps are turned off.
- The ambient light level is low enough that high beams are needed.
- Vehicle speed must be greater than 32 mph (51 km/h).
- Severe weather is not detected.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Deactivating high beams**

The automatic high beams will deactivate if any of the following events occur:

- An approaching vehicle's headlights or a preceding vehicle's tail lamps are detected.
- The headlamp control is moved out of the autolamps position.
- The vehicle speed falls below 27 mph (43 km/h).
- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not needed.
- Severe rain, snow or fog is detected.
- The camera is blocked.

**Note:** Activating the multi-function lever will put the headlamps in manual high beam mode (constant or flash-to-pass) until the lever is returned to the neutral position. To manually override the auto high beam and go to low beam, the headlamp control must be taken out of the (autolamp) position. For severe fog on freeways, or severe fog in low traffic situations, use of fog lamps is recommended.

**Setting auto high beam sensitivity**

The automatic high beam system has two sensitivity settings. The default setting is near. If you would like the high beams to turn off when traffic is further away, the sensitivity setting can be changed to far. The procedure is as follows:

Preconditions:

- Vehicle is at a stop.
- Ignition is in the on position.
- The headlamp control is in the position.
- High-beams are off.

Programming Sequence:

1. Turn the headlamp control from (on) to (autolamp) three times within two seconds, ending in (on).
2. Cycle flash-to-pass three times using the multi-function lever.
3. The high beams will flash momentarily to confirm that the sensitivity setting has been changed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note: The programming sequence will end if either of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed is not zero.
- The battery voltage is out of normal range.

**Troubleshooting**

If the automatic high beam camera becomes blocked, the high beams will not come on automatically. They will only activate when they are manually turned on with the multi-function lever.

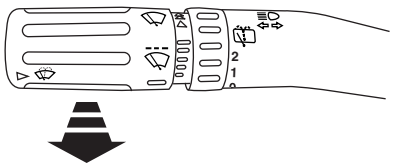
Typical road dust, dirt and water spots will not affect the automatic high beam system's performance.

For significant blockages (e.g. bird dropping, bug splatter, snow, or ice), the automatic high beam system uses a blocked sensor computer program. If it detects a blockage, it will be monitored for two minutes. If no changes are observed, the system will go into low beam mode until the blockage is cleared.

If it appears that automatic control of the high beams is not functioning, check the windshield in front of the camera for blockage.

### Flash to pass

Pull and release to activate.



### Daytime running lamps (DRL) (if equipped)

Turns the front fog lamps on.

To activate:

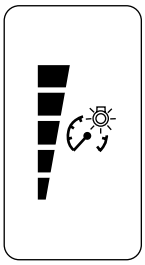
- the ignition must be in the on position,
- the headlamp control is in the off, autolamps or parking lamp position and
- the transmission must be out of the P (Park) position.

**WARNING:** Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) system does not activate the tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### PANEL DIMMER CONTROL



Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and all applicable switches in the vehicle during headlamp and parking lamp operation.

Tap the top of the switch to the first detent to brighten all interior lighted components. Tap the bottom of the switch to the first detent to dim all interior lighted components. Press and hold the switch until the desired lighting level is reached.

Press and hold the top of the switch to the second detent to activate the interior courtesy lights. The lights will remain on until bottom of the switch is pressed and held at the second detent.

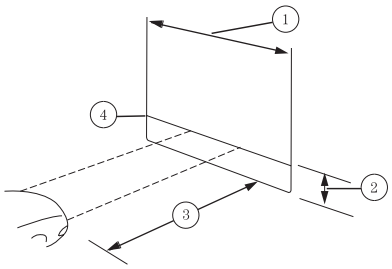
**Note:** If the battery is disconnected, discharged, or a new battery is installed, the dimmer switch requires re-calibration. Press the dimmer switch from the full dim position to the full on position to reset. This will ensure that your displays are visible under all lighting conditions.

### AIMING THE HEADLAMPS

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.

#### Vertical aim adjustment

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.




- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line

2. Measure the height of the headlamp projector (cross hair mark on inner lens) center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well).



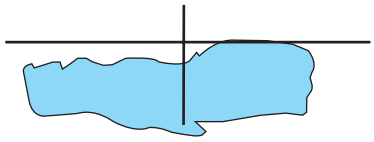


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

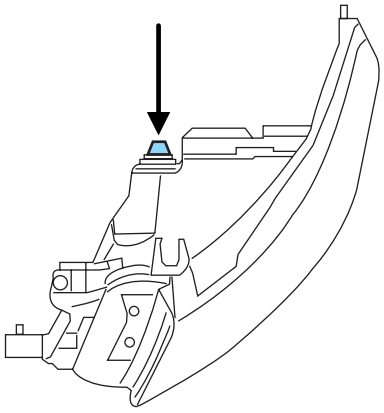
3. Turn on the headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.

To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge towards the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, the beam will need to be adjusted so the edge is at the same height as the horizontal reference line.



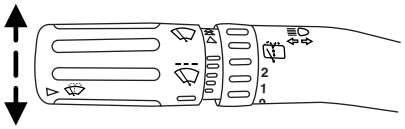
5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise (to adjust down) or counterclockwise (to adjust up). The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.



HORIZONTAL AIM IS NOT REQUIRED FOR THIS VEHICLE AND IS NON-ADJUSTABLE.

### TURN SIGNAL CONTROL

- Push down to activate the left turn signal.
- Push up to activate the right turn signal.



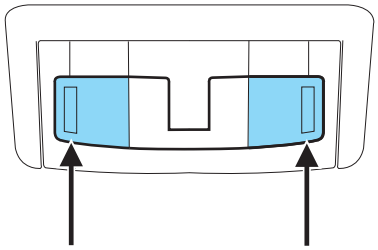


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

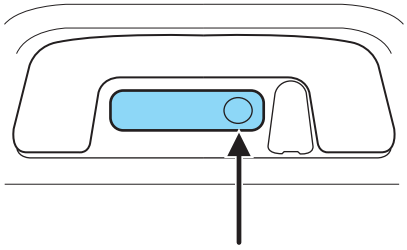
## INTERIOR LAMPS

### Dome lamps and map lamps

The map lamps are located on the overhead console. Press the lens up on either side of each map lamp to turn on the lamps.

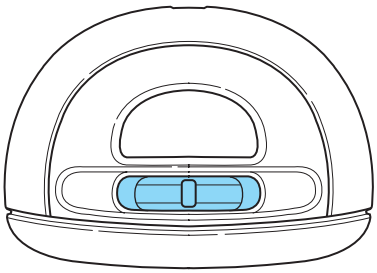


Your vehicle has second row lamps located within the grab handles. Press the lens up to turn on the lamps.



### Cargo lamp

The cargo lamp has a switch with three positions: on, off and center.



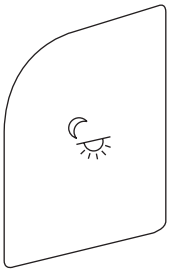
With the switch in the on position, the lamp will stay on all the time. In the off position, the lamp will stay off even when the doors are opened. With the switch in the center position, the lamp will turn on when the doors are opened and the top of the panel dimmer control is pressed to the full on position.



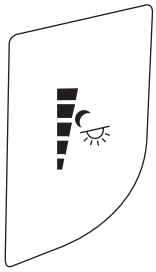
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Ambient lighting

Illuminates footwells and cupholders with a choice of several colors. The ambient lighting control is located on the instrument panel. To activate, press and release this control to cycle through the color choices plus the off state.



Press this control to adjust color intensity.



The lights come on whenever the ignition is in either on or in the accessory position and the parklamps or headlamps are on.

**Note:** The ambient lights will stay on until the ignition is placed in the off position and either of the front doors are opened or the accessory delay timer expires.

## BULB REPLACEMENT

### Lamp assembly condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets)
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens

Take your vehicle to dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

### Using the right bulbs

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized "D.O.T." for North America and an "E" for Europe to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

| Function | Number of bulbs | Trade number |
|---|---|---|
| *Front turn lamp | 2 | PY24W SV+ |
| *Front sidemarker lamp | N/A | LED |
| *Front park lamp | N/A | LED |
| *Headlamp | 2 | D3S HID |
| *Tail/brake/turn signal lamp | N/A | LED |
| *Rear sidemarker | N/A | LED |
| *Backup lamp | N/A | LED |
| License plate lamp | 2 | C5WL |
| *High-mount brake lamp | N/A | LED |
| Fog lamp (if equipped) | 2 | H11 |
| *First row dome/map lamp | 2 | W5W |
| *Second row dome/map lamps | 2 | W5W |
| *Third row cargo lamp | 1 | 211-2XB |
| Visor vanity lamp | 2 | 37 |
| To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer. | | |
| *To replace these lamps - see your authorized dealer. | | |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Replacing interior bulbs

Check the operation of all bulbs frequently.

### Replacing exterior bulbs

Check the operation of all bulbs frequently.

#### *Replacing HID headlamp bulbs (if equipped)*

The headlamps on your vehicle use a “high intensity discharge” source. These lamps operate at a high voltage. When the bulb is burned out, the bulb and starter capsule assembly must be replaced by your authorized dealer.

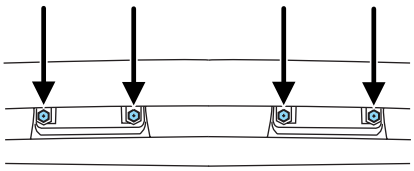
#### *Replacing front parking lamp/turn signal bulbs*

For bulb replacement, see your authorized dealer.

#### *Replacing rear stop/tail/turn/backup and side marker lamps*

Your vehicle is equipped with stop/tail/turn/backup and side marker lamp assemblies containing integral multiple light emitting diodes (LED). If replacement is required, see your authorized dealer.

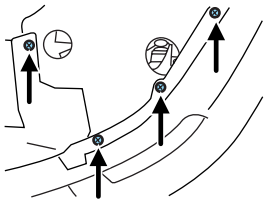
#### *Replacing license plate lamp bulbs*



1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position.
2. Remove the two screws from the license plate lamp assembly and pull it down.
3. Carefully pull the bulb out from the contacts.

Install new bulb(s) in reverse order.

#### *Replacing fog lamp bulbs*



1. Make sure the fog lamp switch is in the off position.
2. From underneath the vehicle, partially remove the tire splash shield by removing four drive screws.

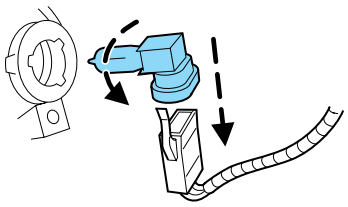
After removing to allow free access to the front fog lamp bulb and electrical wire harness, the splash shield flap should be able to be repositioned.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Rotate the harness/bulb assembly counterclockwise, to remove from the fog lamp.

4. Carefully disconnect the bulb from the harness assembly by releasing the two snap clips.



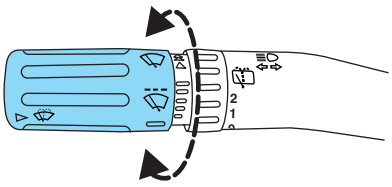
Install the new bulb in reverse order.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER



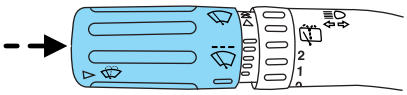
**Windshield wiper:** Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers; rotate towards you to decrease the speed of the wipers.

**Rain sensing wipers:** The rain sensing wipers will automatically activate when moisture is present on the windshield and the multi-function switch is set to one of five auto/interval moisture sensitivity settings. Rotate the end of the control toward the windshield to increase the sensitivity. The speed of the rain sensitive wipers will vary based on the amount of moisture detected on the windshield and the auto/interval setting. There are no interval (intermittent wipe) settings on vehicles with rain sensing wipers. The wipers will continue to wipe as long as the presence of moisture is detected on the windshield. More or less wiping may occur depending on humidity, mist or light rain, or road spray.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean, especially the area around the rear view mirror where the sensor is located or rain sensor performance may be affected.

**Note:** During winter driving conditions with ice, snow or a salty road mist, inconsistent or unexpected wiping or smearing may occur. In these conditions, you can lower the sensitivity to reduce the amount of smearing or override the feature by selecting low- or high-speed wiping or turning the wiper system off.

**Note:** The rain sensing wiper feature must be turned off before entering a car wash.



**Windshield washer:** Press the end of the stalk:

- briefly: causes a single swipe of the wipers without washer fluid.
- a quick press and hold: the wipers will swipe three times with washer fluid.
- a long press and hold: the wipers and washer fluid will be activated for up to ten seconds.

**Courtesy wipe feature:** One extra wipe will occur a few seconds after washing the front window to clear any excess washer fluid remaining on the windshield.



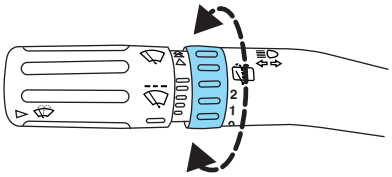
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note:** Do not operate the washer when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat. Check the washer fluid level frequently. Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield, always use the windshield washer. In freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.

### Windshield wiper rainlamp feature (if equipped with Autolamp)

When the windshield wipers are turned on during daylight, and the headlamp control is in the autolamp position, the exterior lamps will turn on after a brief delay and will remain on until the wipers are turned off.

### Rear window wiper/washer controls




For rear wiper operation, rotate the rear window wiper and washer control to the desired position. Select:

2 — Normal speed operation of rear wiper.

1 — Intermittent operation of rear wiper.

0 (off) — Rear wiper and washer off.

For rear wash cycle, rotate (and hold as desired) the rear wiper/washer control to either position.

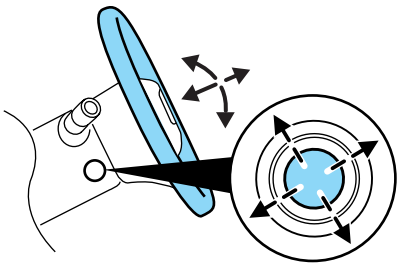
From either position, the control will automatically return to the 2 or 0 (off) position.

**Rear heated wiper blades:** The wiper blades are heated automatically to reduce ice buildup and activates when the vehicle is started. The wiper rests are designed to operate regardless of the geographic location of the vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## POWER TILT/TELESCOPE STEERING COLUMN



The steering column can be adjusted manually by moving the four-way rocker adjustment control located below the turn signal/wiper control stalk. Hold the control to adjust.

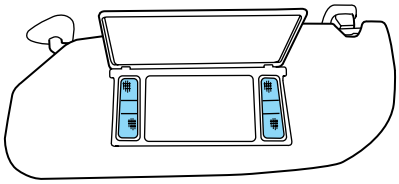
The telescope function is adjusted by moving the control toward the driver to telescope out, and toward the instrument panel to telescope in.

The tilt function is adjusted by moving the control up or down.

During easy exit, when you remove the key, the column will move to the full in and up position. When the key is inserted into the ignition, the column will return to the previous setting.

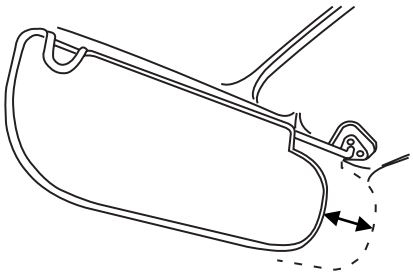
**WARNING:** Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

## ILLUMINATED VISOR MIRROR



Lift the mirror cover to turn on the visor mirror lamp.

### Sliding visor



The visor will slide back and forth on the rod for increased sunlight coverage. Rotate the visor towards the side window and extend it rearward for additional sunlight coverage.

**Note:** To stow the visor back into the headliner, visor must be retracted before moving it back towards the windshield.





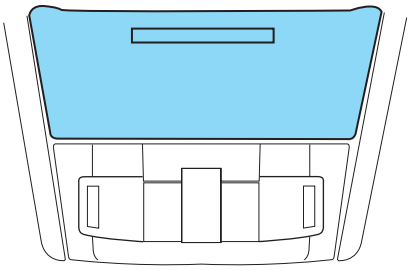
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## OVERHEAD CONSOLE

The appearance of your vehicle's overhead console will vary according to your option package.

### Storage compartment

The storage compartment may be used to store a pair of sunglasses. Press the release area on the rear edge of the bin door to open the storage compartment. The door will open to the full open position.



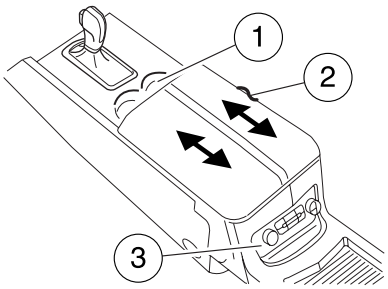
## ELECTRONIC COMPASS

The compass heading is displayed in the touch screen.

## CENTER CONSOLE

Your vehicle may be equipped with a variety of console features. These include:

1. Cupholders
2. Utility compartment with coin holder, audio input jack, USB port and power point
3. Rear climate controls, rear power point outlet and 110 Volt power point outlet (if equipped).




**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

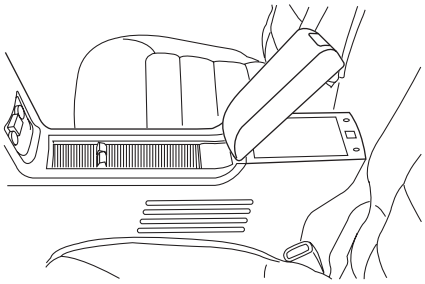


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Second row center console features (if equipped)

The second row center console incorporates the following features:

- Flip forward armrest to provide a flat load floor
- Utility compartment
- Cupholders
- Refrigerator unit (if equipped) in the utility compartment. Refer to *Console refrigerator/freezer.*



**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

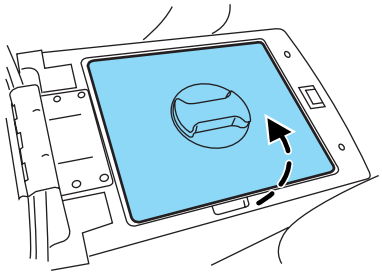
### Console refrigerator/freezer (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a refrigerator/freezer for keeping items cool/frozen.

The refrigerator/freezer will operate when the vehicle is on or the ignition is in the accessory mode. Ford recommends only using the refrigerator/freezer when the vehicle's engine is running.

If there is a need to use the refrigerator/freezer when the engine is off, turn the ignition to the accessory mode and limit the time the refrigerator is running to avoid draining the vehicle's battery.

To open the refrigerator/freezer, flip the console lid forward and then lift off the refrigerator/freezer cover. Be sure to replace the cover after you are done using the refrigerator/freezer. This will help it maintain a more consistent cooling temperature.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




**Refrigerator:** Briefly press and hold the COOL side of the control.The indicator light on the cool side of the switch will illuminate and the indicator light on the freeze side will glow when the refrigerator is active. When in cool mode the temperature will cool to approximately 41°F (5°C). Briefly press and hold COOL again to turn off the refrigerator or briefly press and hold FREEZE to switch over to freezer mode.

**Freezer:** Briefly press and hold the FREEZE side of the control and both indicator lights will illuminate when the freezer is active. When in freeze mode the temperature will cool to approximately 23°F (-5°C). Press FREEZE again to turn off the freezer or press COOL to switch over to refrigerator mode.

When the vehicle is turned off, the refrigerator/freezer will also turn off and will turn back on to the last used mode (freeze or cool) once the vehicle is restarted.

**Cleaning and maintenance**

The refrigerator/freezer is maintenance free, but you can clean the inside of the unit and the cover with a mild soap and water solution when needed.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, condensation on the inside walls of the refrigerator is normal.

### AUXILIARY POWER POINT (12VDC)

**Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlet as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auxiliary power points can be found in the following locations:

- Near the floor in the front console bin on the passenger's side
- In the center console utility compartment
- On the rear of the center console (inside the second row center console on vehicles equipped with that feature)
- In the rear cargo area on the right trim panel

Do not use the power point for operating the cigarette lighter element (if equipped).

To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the power point(s) over the vehicle capacity of 12 VDC/180W. If the power point or cigar lighter socket is not working, a fuse may have blown. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter for information on checking and replacing fuses.

To have full capacity usage of your power point, the engine is required to be running to avoid unintentional discharge of the battery. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

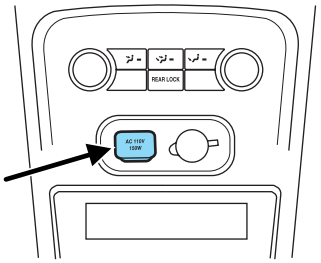
- do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running,
- do not leave battery chargers, video game adapters, computers and other devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

### Power point (110 VAC) (if equipped)

The 110 VAC power point outlet is used for powering electrical devices that require up to 150W. Exceeding the 150W limit will cause the power point to cut off the power temporarily to provide overload protection.

**Note:** The 110 VAC power point is equipped with a safety cap and a safety twist tab. They both provide protection from inserting any object into the power point other than the 110 VAC electrical device plug. The safety cap should always be in a closed position whenever the power point outlet is not in use.




The 110 VAC power point is located on the back of the center console (inside the second row center console on vehicles equipped with that feature).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The power outlet is not designed for the following electric appliances; they may not work properly:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, compressor-driven refrigerators, etc.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment, measuring equipment, etc.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply: microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.

**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110 VAC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design provided by the cap and twist tab. Doing so my cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150W load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

The power point can switch to a fault mode when it is overloaded, overheated, or shorted. For overloading and shorting conditions, unplug your device and turn the ignition key off then on. For an overheating condition, let the system cool off, then turn the ignition key off then on.

The 110 VAC power point can provide power whenever the vehicle ignition is in the run position and the power point green indicator light located in the top left corner is turned on. Refer to the indicator light code below for the power point status.

**Indicator light Code**

Green light is On — Power point is ready to supply power

Green light is Off — Power point power supply is off. Ignition is not in RUN position

Green light is blinking — Power point is in fault mode



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

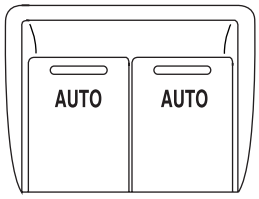
## POWER WINDOWS

**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Press and pull the switches to open and close windows.

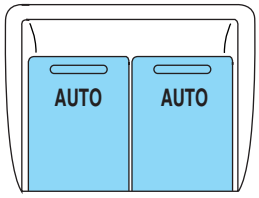
- Press down (to the first detent) and hold the switch to open.
- Pull up (to the first detent) and hold the switch to close.




**Rear Window Buffeting:** When one or both of the rear windows are open, the vehicle may demonstrate a wind throb or buffeting noise. This noise can be alleviated by lowering a front window approximately two to three inches.

**Express-down (One-touch down, all windows)**

Allows the windows to open fully without holding the control down. Press the switch completely down to the second detent and release quickly. The window will open fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.

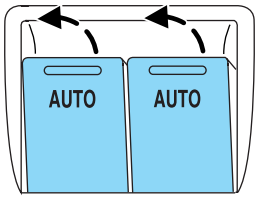





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Express-up (One-touch up, all windows)**

Allows the windows to close fully without holding the control up. Pull the switch completely up to the second detent and release quickly. The window will close fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.




### Global open windows

You can open the vehicle's windows by using the control on the remote transmitter.

Press and hold the control on the transmitter for at least two seconds to begin to open the windows. For the transmitter, pressing either the or control on the transmitter will stop all motion.

**Note:** The ignition must be off and the accessory delay feature must not be activated in order for this feature to operate.

**Note:** This feature can be disabled or enabled by your authorized dealer.

### Global close windows

You can close the vehicle's windows by using the control on the remote transmitter.

Press and hold the control on the transmitter for at least two seconds to close the windows.

**Note:** The ignition must be off and the accessory delay feature must not be activated in order for this feature to operate.

**Note:** This feature can be disabled or enabled by your authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** To avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, verify that windows are free of obstructions before operating and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of window openings.

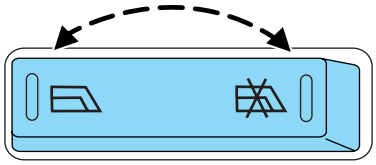


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Window lock

The window lock feature allows only the driver to operate the power windows.

To lock out all the window controls (except for the driver's) press the right side of the control. Press the left side to restore the window controls.



### Bounce-back

When an obstacle has been detected in the window opening as the window is moving upward, the window will automatically reverse direction and move down. This is known as "bounce-back". If the ignition is turned off (without accessory delay being active) during bounce-back, the window will move down until the bounce-back position is reached.

### Security override

To override a bounce-back condition, within two seconds after the window reaches the bounce-back position, pull and hold the switch up and **the window will travel up with no bounce-back or pinch protection.** If the switch is released before the window is fully closed, the window will stop. For example, this can be used to overcome the resistance of ice on the window or seals.

### Accessory delay

With accessory delay, the radio, power windows, and moon roof (if equipped) operate for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned from on to off or until one of the front doors are opened.

## INTERIOR MIRROR

The interior rear view mirror has two pivot points on the support arm which lets you adjust the mirror up or down and from side to side.

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Automatic dimming interior rear view mirror

Your vehicle is equipped with an interior rear view mirror which has an auto-dimming function. The electronic day/night mirror will change from the normal (high reflective) state to the non-glare (darkened) state when bright lights (glare) reach the mirror. When the mirror detects bright light from behind the vehicle, it will automatically adjust (darken) to minimize glare.

The mirror will automatically return to the normal state whenever the vehicle is placed in R (Reverse) to ensure a bright clear view when backing up.

**Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the interior rear view mirror since this may impair proper mirror performance.**

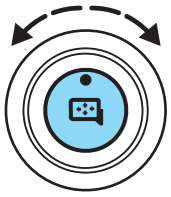
**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power side view mirrors

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

To adjust your mirrors:



1. Rotate the control clockwise to adjust the right mirror and rotate the control counterclockwise to adjust the left mirror.
2. Move the control in the direction you wish to tilt the mirror.
3. Return to the center position to lock mirrors in place.

**Memory mirrors (if equipped)**

The power side view mirror positions are saved when doing a memory set and can be recalled using the memory feature. Refer to *Seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

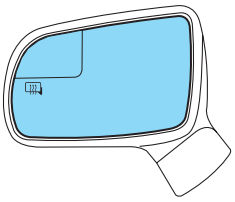
**Automatic dimming feature**

The driver's side view mirror has an auto-dimming function. For more information, refer to *Automatic dimming interior rear view mirror* in this chapter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Heated outside mirrors



Both mirrors are heated automatically to remove ice, mist and fog when the rear window defrost is activated.

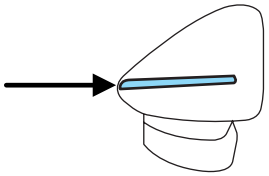
**Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.**

**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

### Fold-away mirrors

Fold the side mirrors in carefully when driving through a narrow space, like an automatic car wash.

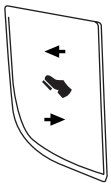
### Signal indicator mirrors



When the turn signal is activated, the outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing will blink.

This provides an additional warning to other drivers that your vehicle is about to turn.

## POWER ADJUSTABLE FOOT PEDALS



The accelerator and brake pedal should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stopped and the gearshift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Press and hold the rocker control (located on the instrument panel) to adjust accelerator and brake pedal.

- Press the top of the control to adjust the pedals away from you.
- Press the bottom of the control to adjust the pedals towards you.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Never adjust the accelerator and brake pedal with feet on the pedals while the vehicle is moving.

### Memory feature (if equipped)

The accelerator and brake pedal positions are saved when doing a memory set function and can be recalled along with the vehicle personality features when a memory position is selected through the remote entry transmitter, keyless entry keypad or memory switch on the driver's door (if equipped with memory feature). Refer to *Seats* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

## SPEED CONTROL

With speed control set, you can maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

**WARNING:** Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

### Using speed control

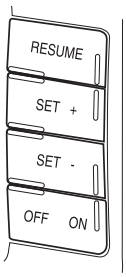
The speed controls are located on the steering wheel. The following buttons work with speed control:

**RESUME:** Press to resume a set speed.

**SET +:** Press to increase the set speed.

**SET – :** Press to decrease the set speed.

**OFF/ON:** Press to turn speed control off or on.




#### *Setting speed control*

To set speed control:

1. Press and release ON.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET + or SET -.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. The indicator  light on the instrument cluster will turn on.

**Note:**

- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.
- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

### *Disengaging speed control*

Press the brake pedal to disengage the speed control. Disengaging the speed control will not erase the previous set speed.

### *Resuming a set speed*

Press and release RESUME. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed.

### *Increasing speed while using speed control*

To set a higher speed:

- Press and hold SET + until you get to the desired speed, then release. You can also use SET + to operate the tap-up function. Press and release SET + to increase the vehicle set speed in 1 mph (1.6 km/h) increments.
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed then press and release SET +.

### *Reducing speed while using speed control*

To reduce a set speed:

- Press and hold SET – until you get to the desired speed, then release. You can also use SET – to operate the tap-down function. Press and release SET – to decrease the vehicle set speed in 1 mph (1.6 km/h) increments.
- Press the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached then press SET –.

### *Turning off speed control*

To turn off the speed control, Press OFF or turn off the ignition.

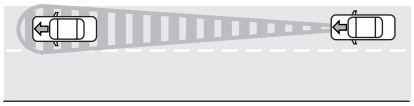
**Note:** When you turn off the speed control or the ignition, your speed control set speed memory is erased.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (ACC) (IF EQUIPPED)

Adaptive cruise control is much like speed control, only this system is designed to automatically adjust your speed to maintain a proper distance between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane. The driver can select from one of three GAP settings, the controls are located on the steering wheel.



At startup, the system sets the gap to the last selected setting. Once activated, the driver can deactivate the system at any time by either pressing the brake pedal or pressing the steering wheel ON/OFF control. In addition, the driver can temporarily increase the vehicle speed above the current speed by manually pressing on the accelerator pedal.

**WARNING:** Always pay close attention to changing road conditions, especially when using Adaptive Cruise Control. Adaptive Cruise Control cannot replace attentive driving. Failing to follow any of the warnings below or failing to pay attention to the road may result in a collision, serious injury or death.

**WARNING:** Adaptive cruise control is not a collision warning or avoidance system. Additionally, adaptive cruise control will not detect:

- Stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

**WARNING:** Do not use the adaptive cruise control when entering or leaving a highway, in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

**WARNING:** Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, rain, spray or snow.

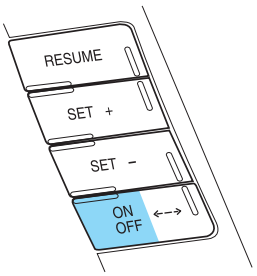


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

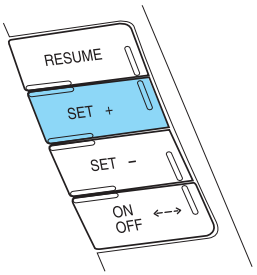
### Setting adaptive cruise control

**Note:** It is the drivers responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.

The controls for using your cruise control are located on the steering wheel.




1. Press and release the ON control. The message center will display CRUISE ON RADAR READY.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.




3. Press and release the SET + control. The vehicle speed will be stored in the memory and the message center will display SET XXX MPH (your desired speed).
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
5. The green cruise indicator light on the instrument cluster will illuminate if there are no vehicles detected in front of you, while the yellow ACC indicator light on the instrument cluster will illuminate if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

### Following a vehicle

**WARNING:** When following a vehicle in front of you, the vehicle will not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor will the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a collision, serious injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed will adjust automatically to maintain a preset gap distance. The distance setting is adjustable, refer to *Setting the gap distance* in this section.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

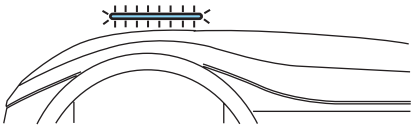


The yellow ACC indicator light in the instrument cluster will be illuminated and the message center will temporarily display a preset GAP <--->.

The vehicle will maintain a constant distance between the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of your lane or out of view.
- The vehicle speed falls below 18 mph (30 km/h).
- A new gap distance is set.

The vehicle brakes will be automatically applied to slow the vehicle to maintain a safe distance between the vehicle in front. The maximum braking which is applied by the ACC system is limited and can be overridden by the driver applying the brakes.



If the ACC system predicts that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning will sound while the ACC continues to brake. This is accompanied by a red warning bar appearing in the windshield. The driver should take **immediate** action.

**Note:** The brakes may emit a sound when they are being modulated by the adaptive cruise control system.

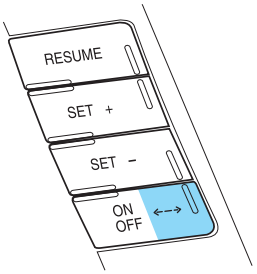
**WARNING:** Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or the warning may be delayed. The driver should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a collision, serious injury or death.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Setting the gap distance*

The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you can be decreased or increased by pressing **<--->** control. GAP <---> will be displayed in the message center. Three gap distance settings are available:




| Message Center Display | Following distance | Following distance at 60 mph (96 km/h) | Dynamic behavior |
|---|---|---|---|
| GAP <-> | 1 second | 29 yards (26 m) | Sporty |
| GAP <---> | 1.5 seconds | 44 yards (40 m) | Normal |
| GAP <-----> | 2.3 seconds | 66 yards (60 m) | Comfort |

Each time the vehicle is restarted, the last chosen gap will be automatically selected.

**Note:** It is the driver's responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

### *Disengaging adaptive cruise control*

Press the brake pedal to disengage the adaptive cruise control. CRUISE CANCELLED will be displayed in the message center.

Disengaging the adaptive cruise control will not erase your previous set speed.

### *Overriding adaptive cruise control*

**WARNING:** Whenever the driver is overriding the ACC by pressing the accelerator pedal, the ACC will not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.

The set speed and gap distance can be overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal.

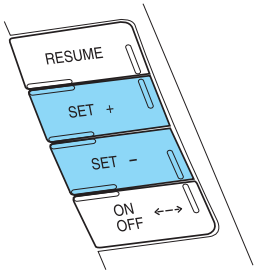


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the driver is overriding ACC, the green cruise indicator light is illuminated, and CRUISE OVERRIDE is displayed in the message center. When the accelerator is released, the ACC function will operate again and vehicle speed will decrease to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

### *Changing the set speed*

There are three ways to change the set speed:

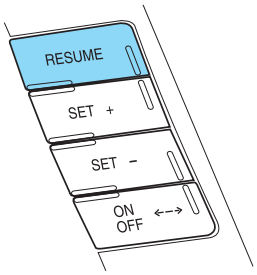



- Accelerate or brake to the desired speed and press and release the SET + or SET – control
- Increase or decrease the speed by holding either the SET + or SET – control, until the desired set speed is shown on the message center. The vehicle speed will gradually change to the selected speed.
- Increase or decrease the speed in increments of 1 mph (2 km/h) by briefly pressing the SET + or SET – control.

The ACC may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle down to the new set speed. The set speed will display continuously in the message center while ACC is active.

### *Resuming the set speed*

Press and release the RESUME control. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed. The set speed will display continuously in the message center while ACC is active.




**Note:** RESUME should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

### *Low speed automatic cancellation*

ACC is not functional at vehicle speeds below 18 mph (30 km/h). Once the vehicle speed drops below 18 mph (30 km/h), an audible alarm will sound, the head's up display will flash and the automatic braking will be released.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Hilly condition usage*

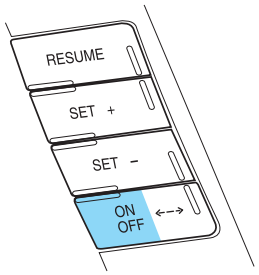
It is recommended that the driver select a lower gear position when ACC is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades (i.e., driving in mountainous areas). In these situations, additional engine braking is needed to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent them from overheating. For more information, reference *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Driving* chapter.

**Note:** If ACC is applying brakes for an extended period of time, an audible alarm will sound, the head's up display will flash and ACC will shut down. This is to allow the brakes to cool down. When the brakes have cooled down, the ACC will again function normally.

### *Turning off cruise control*

Press the OFF button to turn off the cruise control.

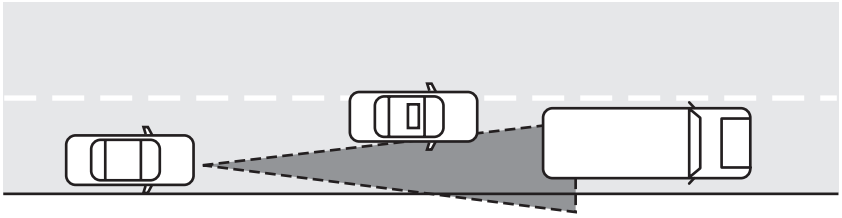
**Note:** When you turn off the cruise control or the ignition, your cruise control set speed memory is erased.




### *Detection issues*

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. In some situations it may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected.

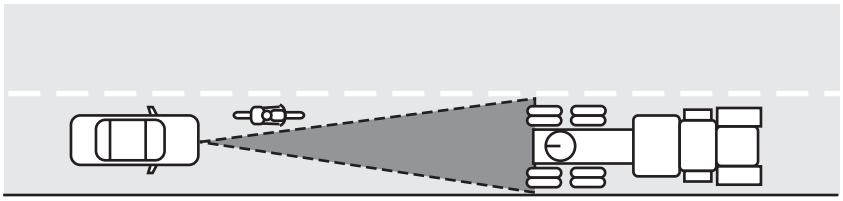
Detection issues can occur:



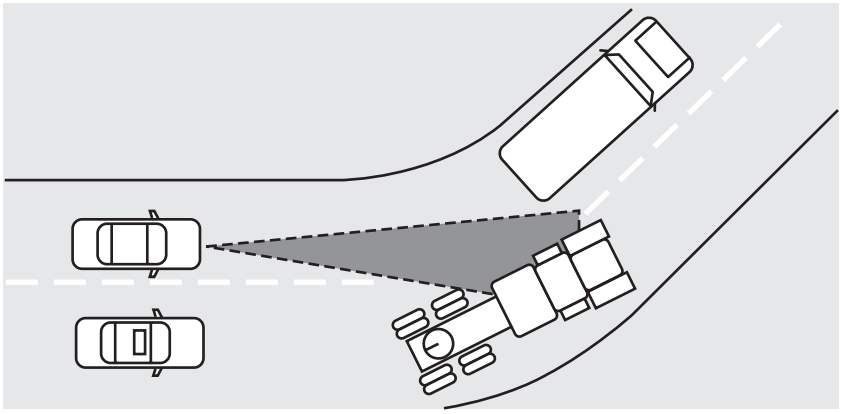
- When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



- With vehicles that edge into your lane. These vehicles can only be detected once they have moved fully into your lane.



- There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases ACC may brake late or unexpectedly. The driver should stay alert and intervene when necessary.

### *ACC Not Available*

Several conditions exist which can cause ACC to deactivate or prevent ACC from activating when requested. These conditions include:

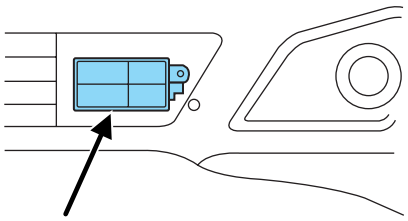
- The sensor is blocked, refer to *Blocked sensor* in this section.
- Brake temperature is high, refer to *Hilly condition usage* in this section.
- A failure has occurred in the ACC system or related system.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Blocked sensor*

If a message regarding a blocked sensor is displayed, the radar signals from the sensor have been obstructed. The sensor is located behind a fascia cover near the driver side of the lower grille. When the radar signals are obstructed, a vehicle ahead cannot be detected and the ACC will not function. The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message being displayed.



| Cause | Action |
|---|---|
| The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way | Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction |
| The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display | Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is no longer obstructed |
| Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals | Do not use ACC in these conditions because it may not detect, warn, or respond to potential collisions. |
| Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals | Do not use ACC in these conditions because it may not detect, warn, or respond to potential collisions. |

**WARNING:** Do not use ACC when towing a trailer with brake controls. Aftermarket trailer brakes will not function properly when ACC is activated because the brakes are electronically controlled. Failing to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

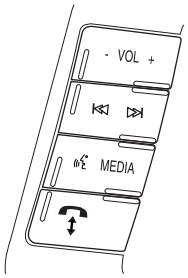


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Do not use tires sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of ACC. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

## STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS

### Radio control features

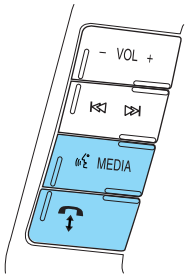



**– VOL + (Volume):** Press to decrease or increase the volume.

**(Seek):** Press to select the previous/next radio station preset, CD track or satellite radio station preset depending on which media mode you are in.

**MEDIA:** Press repeatedly to select:

- AM, FM1, FM2 or CD
- SAT1, SAT2 or SAT3 (Satellite radio mode)
- LINE IN (Auxiliary input jack)




**SYNC® system hands free control feature**

Press briefly to use the voice command feature. You will hear a tone and LISTENING will appear in the radio display. Press and hold to exit voice command.

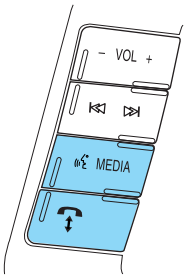
Press to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold to end call or exit phone mode.

For further information on the SYNC® system, refer to the *SYNC®* supplement.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Navigation system/SYNC® hands free control features (if equipped)**




Press control briefly until the voice icon appears on the Navigation display to use the voice command feature.

Press to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold to exit phone mode or end call.

For further information on the Navigation system/SYNC® system, refer to the *Navigation System* and *SYNC®* supplements.

## POWER PANORAMIC VISTA ROOF™ (IF EQUIPPED) AND POWER SUNSHADES

The panoramic Vista Roof™ and power sunshade controls are located on the overhead console.

**WARNING:** Do not let children play with the panoramic Vista Roof™ and power sunshade or leave children unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

**WARNING:** When closing the panoramic Vista Roof™ and power sunshade, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the panoramic Vista Roof™ and power sunshade opening.

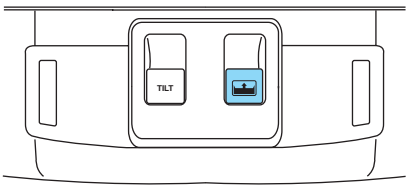
**Note:** Do not attempt to move the panoramic power sunshades manually or sunshade damage or malfunction may occur. The sunshade track clips are designed to release the sunshade crossbar in order to prevent damage to the system. If this occurs the sunshade crossbar ends may just need to be slid back into position to regain proper function. See your authorized dealer for proper panoramic Vista Roof™ or sunshade operating, diagnostic or repair instructions.

**Note:** The same control operates both the sunshades and the panoramic Vista Roof™. If the vehicle has a fixed glass roof, there will only be the control in the center position.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The panoramic Vista Roof™ and power sunshade are equipped with an automatic, one-touch, express opening feature. To stop motion at any time during the one-touch operation, press the control a second time.



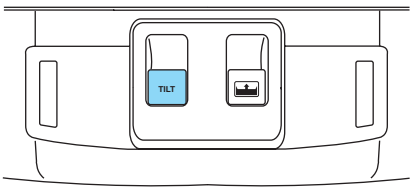

**To open power sunshades and panoramic Vista Roof™:** Press and release the control to open the sunshade. The front and rear sunshades open simultaneously.

**Note:** Vista Roof™ will only open after power sunshades are completely open. Power sunshades will only close after Vista Roof™ is completely closed.

To open the panoramic Vista Roof™ press and release the control. The panoramic Vista Roof™ will open to the "comfort" position. Press and release the control again to fully open. To stop the one-touch open feature press the control again.

**Note:** The "comfort" position helps to alleviate rumbling wind noise which may happen in the vehicle with the roof fully opened.

**To close the panoramic Vista Roof™ and power sunshades:** Pull the control down and release until the glass panel stops at the "express close" position. Firmly pull and hold the control again to fully close the Vista Roof™. Pull the control down again and release to close the sunshades at the "express close" position. Firmly pull and hold the control again to fully close the front and rear sunshades.




**To vent the panoramic Vista Roof™:** From the closed position, press and release the TILT control. To close, pull and hold the TILT control down.

**Note:** If the panoramic Vista Roof™ is excessively operated, the glass and shade motors will automatically go into a fail-safe jog mode (manual intermittent operation) to prevent overheating and/or damage to the motor. The motors will revert back to normal operation after a period of idle time.

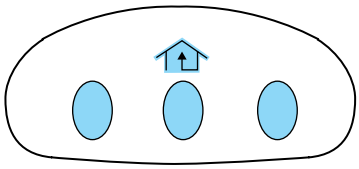
### UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER (IF EQUIPPED)

The appearance of your vehicle's universal garage door opener will vary according to your option package. Before programing, make sure your transmitter matches the graphic in the procedure.

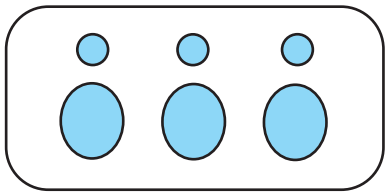


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

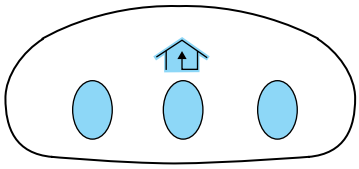
**HomeLink®**



**Car2U® Home Automation System**



### HomeLink® Wireless Control System (if equipped)



The HomeLink® Wireless Control System, located on the driver's visor, provides a convenient way to replace up to three hand-held transmitters with a single built-in device. This feature will learn the radio frequency codes of most transmitters to operate garage doors, entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks, and home or office lighting.

**WARNING:** When programming your HomeLink® Wireless Control System to a garage door or gate, be sure that people and objects are out of the way to prevent potential injury or damage.

Do not use the HomeLink® Wireless Control System with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current U.S. federal safety standards. For more information, contact HomeLink® at: **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

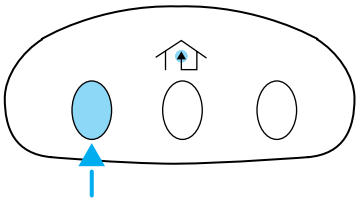
Retain the original transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future programming procedures (i.e. new HomeLink® equipped vehicle purchase). It is also suggested that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed Homelink® buttons be erased for security purposes, refer to *Programming* in this section.

### *Programming*

**Do not program HomeLink® with the vehicle parked in the garage.**

**Note:** Your vehicle may require the ignition switch to be turned to the accessory position for programming and/or operation of the HomeLink®. It is also recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink® for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

1. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter 1–3 inches (2–8 cm) away from the HomeLink® button you wish to program (located on your visor) while keeping the indicator light in view.



2. Simultaneously press and hold both the chosen HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapidly blinking light. Now you may release both the HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons.

**Note:** Some entry gates and garage door openers may require you to replace Step 2 with procedures noted in the *Gate Operator and Canadian Programming* in this section for Canadian residents.

3. Firmly **press and hold for five seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink® button up to two separate times to activate the door. If the door does not activate, press and hold the just-trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light.
- If the indicator light **stays on constantly, programming is complete** and your device should activate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.
- If the indicator light blinks **rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light continue with "Programming" Steps 4 through 6** to complete programming of a rolling code equipped device (most commonly a garage door opener).

4. At the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) in the garage, locate the "learn" or "smart" button (usually near where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the unit).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Firmly press and release the “learn” or “smart” button. (The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.)

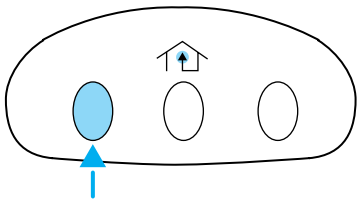
**Note:** There are 30 seconds in which to initiate Step 6.

6. Return to the vehicle and firmly **press, hold for two seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink® button. Repeat the **press/hold/release** sequence again and, depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code equipped device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.

HomeLink® should now activate your rolling code equipped device. To program additional HomeLink® buttons begin with Step 1 in this section. For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink® at **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**

### *Gate Operator & Canadian Programming*

During programming, your hand-held transmitter may automatically stop transmitting — not allowing enough time for HomeLink® to accept the signal from the hand-held transmitter.



After completing Step 1 outlined in the *Programming* section, replace Step 2 with the following:

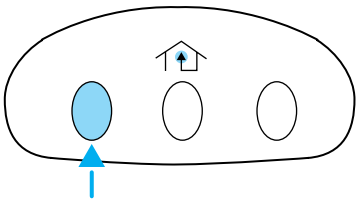
**Note:** If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised to unplug the device during the “cycling” process to prevent overheating.

- Continue to press and hold the HomeLink® button (note Step 2 in the *Programming* section) while you press and release — **every two seconds** (“cycle”) your hand-held transmitter until the frequency signal has been accepted by the HomeLink®. The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink® accepts the radio frequency signal.
- Proceed with Step 3 in the *Programming* section.



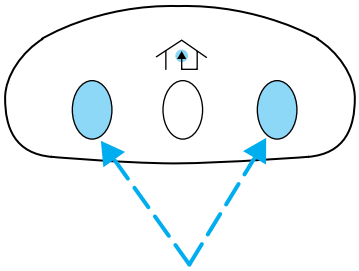
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Operating the HomeLink® Wireless Control System*



To operate, simply press and release the appropriate HomeLink® button. Activation will now occur for the trained product (garage door, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, or home or office lighting etc.). For convenience, the hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time. In the event that there are still programming difficulties, contact HomeLink® at **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**

### *Erasing HomeLink® buttons*



To erase the three programmed buttons (individual buttons cannot be erased):

- Press and hold the two outer HomeLink® buttons until the indicator light begins to flash-after 20 seconds. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer that 30 seconds.

HomeLink® is now in the train (or learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with Step 1 in the *Programming* section.

### *Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button*

To program a device to HomeLink® using a HomeLink® button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. **Do NOT** release the button.

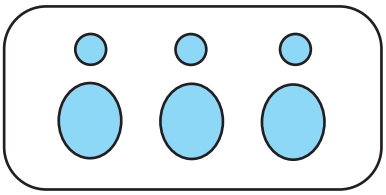
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the HomeLink® button, follow Step 1 in the *Programming* section.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink® at **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Car2U® Home Automation System (if equipped)



The Car2U® Home Automation System is a universal transmitter located in the driver's visor that includes two primary features – a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. The Car2U® system's garage door opener function replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter that is integrated into the interior of your vehicle. After being programmed for garage doors, the Car2U® system transmitter can be programmed to operate security devices and home lighting systems.

**WARNING:** Make sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or security device you are programming. Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage.

Do not use the Car2U® system with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982).

Be sure to keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future Car2U® system programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale or lease termination of the vehicle, the programmed Car2U® system buttons should be erased for security reasons. Refer to *Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons* later in this section.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the Car2U® system. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person assist you in programming the transmitter.

Additional Car2U® system information can be found on-line at www.learcar2U.com or by calling the toll-free Car2U® system help line at 1-866-572-2728.

#### *Types of garage door openers (rolling code and fixed code)*

The Car2U® Home Automation System may be programmed to operate rolling code and fixed code garage door openers.

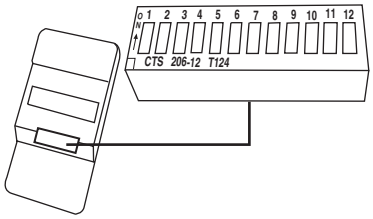
- Rolling code garage door openers were produced after 1996 and are code protected. Rolling code means the coded signal is changed every time your remote control garage door opener is used.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Fixed code garage door openers were produced prior to 1996. Fixed code uses the same coded signal every time. It is manually programmed by setting DIP switches for a unique personal code.

If you do not know if your garage door opener is a rolling code or fixed code device, open your garage door opener's remote control battery cover. If a panel of DIP switches is present your garage door opener is a fixed code device. If not, your garage door opener is a rolling code device.



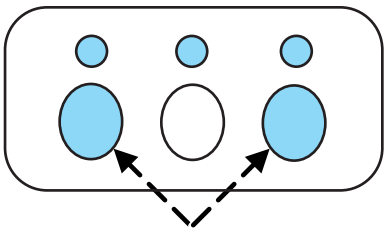

### *Rolling code programming*

**Note:** Programming the rolling code garage door opener involves time-sensitive actions. Read the entire procedure prior to beginning so you will know which actions are time-sensitive. If you do not follow the time-sensitive actions, the device will time out and you will have to repeat the procedure.

**Note:** Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage.

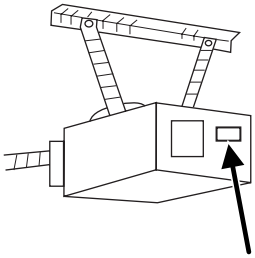
Make sure that your key is on and engine off while programming the transmitter.

1. Firmly press the two outer Car2U® system buttons for 1–2 seconds, then release.

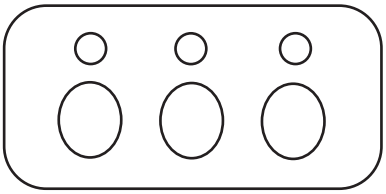




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2. Go to the garage to locate the garage door opener motor and its "learn" button. You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the unit's cover or light lens to locate the "learn" button. Press the "learn" button, after which you will have 10–30 seconds to return to your vehicle and complete the following steps. If you cannot locate the "learn" button, refer to the Owner's Guide of your garage door opener or call the toll-free Car2U® system help line at 1-866-57Car2U (1-866-572-2728).



3. Return to your vehicle. Press and hold the Car2U® system button you would like to use to control the garage door. You may need to hold the button from 5–20 seconds, during which time the selected button indicator light will blink slowly. Immediately (within 1 second) release the button once the garage door moves. When the button is released, the indicator light will begin to blink rapidly until programming is complete.

4. Press and release the button again. The garage door should move, confirming that programming is successful. If your garage door does not operate, repeat the previous steps in this section.

After successful programming, you will be able to operate your Car2U® system by pressing the button you programmed to activate the opener. The indicator light above the selected button will turn on to confirm that the Car2U® system is responding to the button command.

To program another rolling code device such as an additional garage door opener, a security device or home lighting, repeat Steps 1 through 4 substituting a different function button in Step 3 than what you used for the garage door opener. For example, you could assign the left-most button to the garage door, the center button to a security device, and the right-most button to another garage door opener.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note:** The Car2U® system allows for three devices to be programmed. If you need to change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, it is necessary to erase the current settings using the *Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons* procedure and then programming all of the devices being used.

### *Fixed code programming*

**Note:** Do not program the Car2U® system with the vehicle in the garage.

Make sure that your key is on and engine off while programming the transmitter.

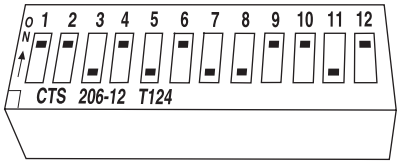
1. To program units with fixed code DIP switches, you will need the garage door hand-held transmitter, paper and a pen or pencil.

2. Open the battery cover and record the switch settings from left to right for all 8 to 12 switches. Use the figure below:

When a switch is in the up, on, or + position, circle “L.”

When a switch is in the middle, neutral, or 0 position, circle “M.”

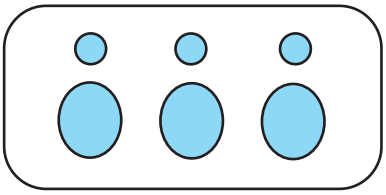
When a switch is in the down, off, or – position, circle “R.”




| Switch position | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Up, on or + | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L | L |
| Middle, neutral or 0 | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M |
| Down, off or – | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| L=left; M=middle; R=right | | | | | | | | | | | | |

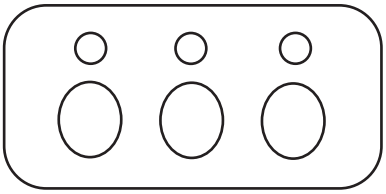


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. To input these positions into the Car2U® system, simultaneously press all three Car2U® system buttons for a few seconds and then release to put the device into programming mode. The indicator lights will blink slowly. Within 2.5 minutes enter your corresponding DIP switch settings from left to right into your Car2U® system by pressing and releasing the buttons corresponding to the settings you circled.

4. After inputting switch settings, simultaneously press and release all three Car2U® system buttons. The indicator lights will turn on.



5. Press and hold the Car2U® system button you would like to use to control the garage door. Immediately (within 1 second) release the button once the garage door moves. During this time the selected button indicator light will blink slowly. Do not release the button until you see the garage door move. Most garage doors open quickly. You may need to hold the button from 5–55 seconds before observing movement of the garage door.

6. The indicator light will (begin to) blink rapidly until programming is complete. If your garage door opener does not operate following these steps, repeat Steps 2 through 6. Otherwise, call the toll-free Car2U® help line at 1-866-57Car2U (1-866-572-2728).

After successful programming, you will be able to operate your Car2U® system by pressing the button you programmed to activate the opener. The indicator light above the selected button will turn on to confirm that the Car2U® system is responding to the button command.

### *Erasing the Car2U® Home Automation System buttons*

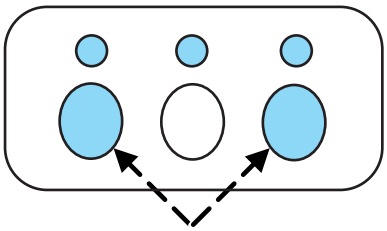
**Note:** The system allows for three devices to be programmed. If you need to change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, it will be necessary to erase the current settings using the procedure below and then reprogramming all of the devices being used.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To erase programming on the Car2U® system (individual buttons cannot be erased), use the following procedure:

1. Firmly press the two outside Car2U® system buttons simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator lights begin to blink rapidly. The indicator lights are located directly above the buttons.



2. Once the indicator lights begin to blink, release your fingers from the buttons. The codes for all buttons are erased.

If you sell your vehicle equipped with the Car2U® system, it is recommended that you erase the programming for security reasons.

### *FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance*

The Car2U® system complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes and modifications to the Car2U® system transmitter by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use the equipment.

## POWER LIFTGATE

You can power open or close the liftgate with the following controls.

- instrument panel control button
- remote entry transmitter button
- outside liftgate control button
- control button in the rear cargo area

**Opening and Closing the power liftgate:**

**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

**WARNING:** To avoid injury to third-row occupants when closing the liftgate, ensure that the head of any occupant is not in the path of the closing liftgate.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to play near an open or moving power liftgate.

The liftgate will only operate with the vehicle in P (Park).

When the liftgate is being power closed, a chime will sound three times as the liftgate begins to power close. A single chime indicates a problem with the close request, caused by:

- the ignition is on and the transmission is not in P (Park)
- or the battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage
- or the vehicle speed is at or above 3 mph (5 km/h)

If the liftgate reverses and starts to close after an open request, a fast continuous chime indicates excessive load on the gate or a possible strut failure. If any excessive load is removed and you still have a faster chime, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

Do not attempt to manually force the liftgate to travel faster than the power system will permit. This will activate the obstacle detection feature.

**Note:** Cycling the ignition prior to completely latching the liftgate could result in damage to the liftgate and/or its power components. Make sure the liftgate is fully latched before operating the vehicle.

Care should be exercised in starting the engine before the liftgate is fully closed (latched). If the ignition is cycled during a liftgate power close cycle and the liftgate is 6-10 inches (15–24 cm) from being latched, the liftgate may reverse to the full open position. Verify that the gate is closed before operating or moving the vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. The liftgate or it components could be damaged in an enclosure, if the liftgate is open.

When power operating the liftgate at temperatures below 32°F (0°C), the liftgate may stop about 5 inches (12.7 cm) from the full open position. The liftgate can be fully opened by pushing it upward to the maximum open position.

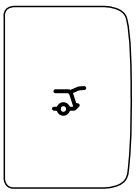
The power liftgate feature can be enabled or disabled using the message center controls. With the setting turned off, power operation is disabled from the liftgate handle button and from the rear cargo area button. The integrated keyhead transmitter and instrument panel switch will still continue to operate the liftgate regardless of the position state of the message center. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**To power open or close the liftgate from the instrument panel:**

Press the button, located to the left of the steering column, once to power open or close the liftgate.

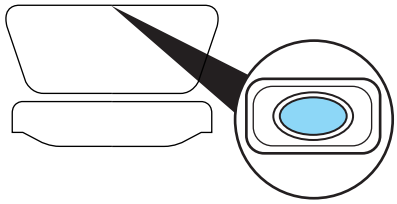


**To power open or close the liftgate with the remote entry transmitter:**

Press twice within three seconds to power open or close the liftgate. Refer to *Remote entry system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

**To power open the liftgate with outside liftgate control button:**

1. To open, unlock the liftgate with the remote entry transmitter or power door unlock control.
2. To open the liftgate, press the control button located on the surface above the license plate.

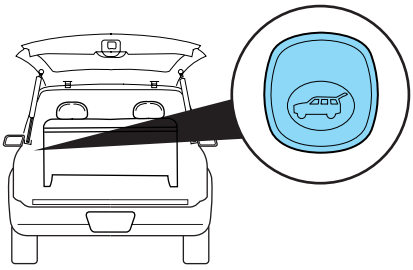


**Note:** For the best performance allow the power system to open the liftgate after pressing the control. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation.

**To power close the liftgate with the rear cargo area control button:**

Press and release the control on the left rear quarter panel to close the liftgate.

**Note:** The rear cargo area control button is disabled when the liftgate is latched.



**WARNING:** Keep clear of the liftgate when activating the rear switch.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note:** The liftgate movement direction can be reversed with a second press of the instrument panel, or the rear cargo area control button, or a second double press of the remote entry transmitter button.

**To manually operate the liftgate:**

1. Disable the liftgate power function. Refer to the *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

2. Open and close the liftgate as you would a standard liftgate.

**Note:** In case of operation in extreme cold -40°F (-40°C), or on extreme inclines, manual operation of the liftgate is suggested.

**Obstacle detection:**

The power liftgate system is equipped with an obstacle detection feature.

If the power liftgate is closing, the system will reverse to full open when it detects an obstacle. A chime will sound three times when an obstacle is detected as the liftgate begins to reopen. Once the obstacle is removed, the liftgate can be closed under power.

If the power liftgate is opening, the system will stop and a chime will sound three times when an obstacle is detected. Once the obstacle is removed, the liftgate can again be operated normally.

**Resetting the power liftgate:**

The power liftgate may not operate properly and may need to be reset if any of these conditions occur:

- a low voltage or dead battery
- disconnected battery
- the liftgate is manually closed and left ajar (unlatched)

To reset the power liftgate:

1. Disconnect the battery for 20 seconds then, reconnect the battery.

2. Manually close and fully latch the liftgate.

3. Power open the liftgate by using the remote entry transmitter, or the instrument panel control button.

**Note:** If the power liftgate system is turned off in the message center, the system cannot be activated with the outside release handle or rear cargo area control button. The system will need to be turned on to resume operation with the outside release handle or rear cargo area control button. The power liftgate is still operational through the use of the remote entry transmitter and instrument panel button when the power liftgate is turned off in the message center.



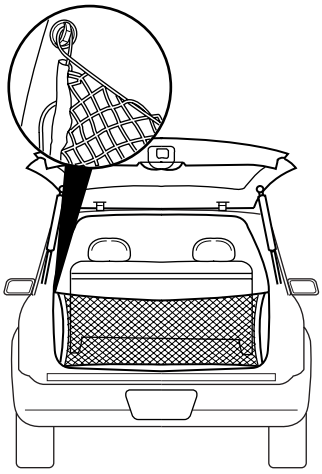
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Make sure that the liftgate is closed to prevent exhaust fumes from being drawn into the vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate door open, keep the vehicle well ventilated so outside air comes into the vehicle.

## CARGO AREA FEATURES

### Cargo net (if equipped)

The cargo pouch net secures lightweight objects in the cargo area. Attach the net to the anchors provided. Do not put more than 50 lb. (22 kg) in the net.



**WARNING:** The cargo net is not designed to restrain objects during a collision or heavy braking.

### Cargo shade (if equipped)

If your vehicle has a cargo shade, you can use it to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.

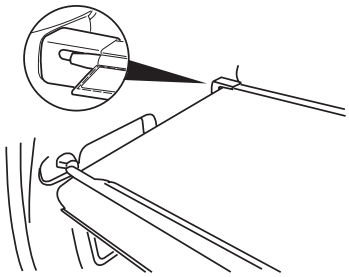
**Note:** Both of the third row outboard safety belts must be placed in the stowage clips to prevent potential wrinkling of the cargo shade. Refer to *Safety restraints* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To install the shade:

- Insert the ends of the cargo shade into the mounting features located behind the rear seat on the rear trim panels.



To operate the shade:

1. Grasp the rear edge of the cargo shade and pull rearward.

2. Secure both ends of the support rod into the retention slots located on the rear quarter trim panels.

**WARNING:** Ensure that the posts are properly latched in mounting features. The cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or accident if it is not securely installed.

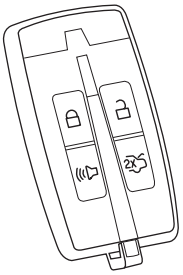
**WARNING:** Do not place any objects on the cargo area shade. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of vehicle in the case of a sudden stop or collision.



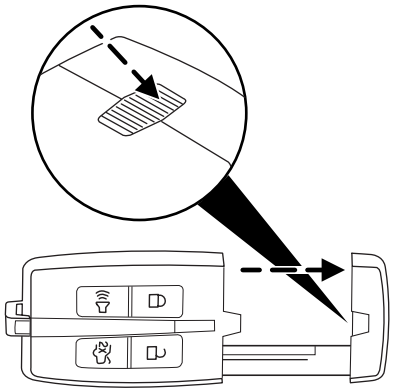
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## KEYS

Your vehicle is equipped with two Intelligent Access keys which operate the power locks and the remote entry system. The IA key must be inside the vehicle in order to activate the push button start system.



The IA key also contains a removable mechanical key blade that can be used to unlock the driver door. To release the mechanical key blade, press the release button on the back of the transmitter and slide the blade out.



Your IA keys are programmed to your vehicle. You cannot enter or start your vehicle with an unprogrammed key. If you lose one or both of your IA keys, replacements are available from your authorized dealer. For more information on programming replacement IA keys, refer to the *SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system* section in this chapter.

**Note:** Your vehicle's IA backup keys were issued with a security tag that provides important vehicle key cut information. It is recommended that you keep the tag in a safe place for future reference.

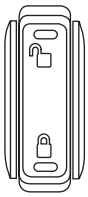





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## POWER DOOR LOCKS

- Press the control to unlock all doors.
- Press the control to lock all doors.



### Smart unlocks

The smart unlock feature is intended to prevent you from unintentionally locking your IA key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment.

When you lock your vehicle using the driver or passenger power door lock control (with the door open), after you close the door the vehicle will search for an IA key in the passenger compartment. If an IA key is found inside the vehicle, all of the doors will immediately unlock and the horn will chirp, indicating that the IA key is inside.

In order to override the smart unlock feature and intentionally lock the IA key inside the vehicle, you can lock your vehicle using your keyless entry keypad or using the control on another IA key. Refer to *Keyless entry system* in this chapter for more information on keyless entry keypad operation.

### Global open/close windows

You can open and close the vehicle's windows by using the and controls on the transmitter. Refer to *Power windows* in the *Driver Controls* chapter for more information.

### Central locking/Two-stage unlocking

When unlocking the driver door with the key, turn it once toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock that door only, if the two-stage unlocking is enabled. Turn the key a second time to unlock all doors. When locking, turn the key toward the front of the vehicle to lock all doors.

Two-stage unlocking may be disabled and re-enabled (to allow all vehicle doors to unlock simultaneously) by simultaneously pressing the and controls on the transmitter for four seconds.

**Note:** The turn lamps will flash twice to confirm that a change to the feature has occurred.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Autolock feature

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all the doors are closed,
- the ignition is on,
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

The autolock feature repeats when:

- any door is opened then closed while the ignition is on and the vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower, and
- the vehicle then attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

#### *Deactivating/activating autolock feature*

Your vehicle comes with the autolock features activated; there are four methods to enable/disable this feature:

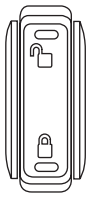
- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock procedure,
- using a keypad procedure, or
- by using the instrument cluster message center. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

**Note:** The autolock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autounlock feature.

#### *Power door lock switch autolock enable/disable procedure*

Before starting, ensure the ignition is off and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.



5. Turn the ignition back on. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.





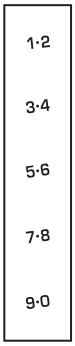
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. To enable/disable the autolock feature, press the unlock control, then press the lock control. The horn will chirp once if autolock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autolock was activated.

7. Turn the ignition off. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

### *Keyless entry keypad autolock enable/disable procedure*

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Close all the doors.
3. Enter factory–set 5–digit entry code.
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4 press the 7 • 8.
5. Release the 7 • 8.
6. Release the 3 • 4.




The user will receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

### *Autounlock feature*

The autounlock feature will unlock all the doors when:

- the ignition is on, all the doors are closed, and the vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h);
- the vehicle has then come to a stop and the ignition is turned off or to accessory; and
- the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being turned off or to accessory.

**Note:** The doors will not autounlock if the vehicle has been electronically locked before the driver door is opened.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Deactivating/activating autounlock feature*

Your vehicle comes with the autounlock features activated; there are four methods to enable/disable this feature:

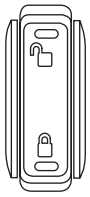
- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock sequence,
- using a keypad procedure, or
- by using the instrument cluster message center. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

**Note:** The autounlock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autolock feature.

### *Power door lock switch autounlock enable/disable procedure*

Before starting, ensure the ignition is off and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.



5. Turn the ignition back on. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. To enable/disable the autounlock feature, press the lock control, then press the unlock control. The horn will chirp once if autounlock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autounlock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition off. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

***Keyless entry keypad autounlock enable/disable procedure***

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Close all the doors.
3. Enter factory–set 5–digit entry code.
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8. While still holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8 a second time.
5. Release the 3 • 4.

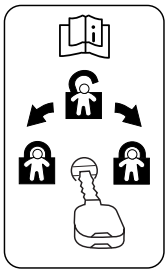


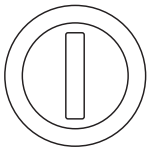

The user will receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

## CHILDPROOF DOOR LOCKS

- When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- The rear doors can be opened from the outside when the doors are unlocked.

The childproof locks are located on rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door. Setting the lock for one door will not automatically set the lock for both doors.





- Insert the key and turn to the lock position (key horizontal) to engage the childproof locks.
- Insert the key and turn to the unlock position (key vertical) to disengage the childproof locks.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM

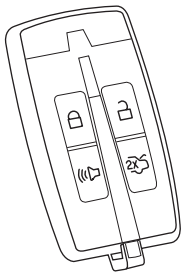
The Intelligent Access keys (IA key) comply with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle, or
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The transmitter allows you to:



- remotely unlock the vehicle doors.
- remotely lock all the vehicle doors.
- remotely open the power liftgate.
- activate the personal alarm.
- arm and disarm the perimeter anti-theft system.
- operate the illuminated entry feature.
- activate the global opening windows feature.

Refer to *Intelligent Access* in this section for more features.

The remote entry lock/unlock feature operates in any ignition position except while the vehicle is in the start position. The panic feature operates with the ignition off.

If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take **ALL Intelligent Access keys** with you to the authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Intelligent Access

**WARNING:** Radio waves from the Intelligent Access system transmitters in the vehicle may affect certain implanted medical devices such as pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators. People having such implanted medical devices should ask the medical device manufacturer or their physician whether the Intelligent Access system may affect the equipment before coming into close proximity with a vehicle equipped with Intelligent Access. Failure to do so may result in interference with the medical device, which could result in serious injury.

Your Intelligent Access system uses a radio frequency (RF) signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to unlock when commanded (either by pressing any keyless entry keypad button, the power liftgate button, or a button on the transmitter itself). If excessive RF interference is present in the area, or if your vehicle battery is low, it may be necessary to mechanically unlock your door. The mechanical key blade in your IA key can be used to open the driver's door in this situation (refer to *Intelligent access key* in this chapter for more information on the location and use of the mechanical key blade).

Your vehicle will allow you to unlock and enter your vehicle without actively using a key or transmitter. You can use the Intelligent Access feature at the driver door or at the liftgate. You can activate the Intelligent Access feature as long as you have one of your IA keys within range of the driver door or the liftgate.

**Activating Intelligent Access at the Driver's Door:** If your IA key is within 3 feet (1 meter) of the drivers door, you can activate your Intelligent Access system by pressing any button on the keyless entry keypad. The drivers door will automatically unlock and the door can be opened.

(**Note:** If two stage unlocking is disabled, all doors will unlock when you press any button on the keyless entry keypad).

**Activating Intelligent Access at the liftgate:** If your IA key is within 3 feet (1 meter) of the liftgate, you can activate your Intelligent Access system by pressing the exterior liftgate release button, hidden under the trim above the license plate. The liftgate will release and open.

**Push button start:** The push button start system allows you to start your vehicle without using a key. Refer to *Push button start* in the *Driving* chapter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Unlocking the doors/two stage unlock

1. Press and release to unlock the driver's door.

**Note:** The interior lamps and parking lamps will illuminate.

2. Press and release again within three seconds to unlock all the doors.

The remote entry system activates the illuminated entry feature; this feature turns on the lamps for 25 seconds or until the ignition is turned on.

The battery saver feature will turn off the interior lamps 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off.

Two stage unlocking may be disabled or re-enabled by simultaneously pressing the and controls on the transmitter for four seconds (disabling two stage unlock allows all vehicle doors to unlock simultaneously). The parking lamps will illuminate twice to indicate that two-stage unlock was enabled or disabled.

When two stage unlocking is disabled, intelligent access at the driver's door results in an unlock of all doors (not just the driver door).

### Locking the doors

1. Press and release to lock all the doors. The parking lamps will illuminate.

2. Press and release again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. **Note:** The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp and the turn lamps will illuminate if all the doors and liftgate are closed.

**Note:** If any door or the liftgate is not closed, the horn will chirp twice and the lamps will not flash.

### Opening the power liftgate (if equipped)

Press twice within three seconds to fully unlatch and open the liftgate.

**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the liftgate area before using power liftgate control.

In order to fully lower and latch the liftgate, press the control twice.

If the liftgate stops mid travel, it may have detected an obstacle, Check to ensure the liftgate swing zone is free from obstruction and reset the power assist by manually closing the liftgate. Normal operation can then be resumed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Make sure the liftgate is closed to prevent exhaust fumes from being drawn into the vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents open so outside air comes into the vehicle.

### Car finder

Press twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn lamps will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

### Sounding a panic alarm

Press to activate the alarm. The horn will sound and the turn lamps will flash for a maximum of three minutes. Press again or turn the ignition on to deactivate, or wait for the alarm to time out in three minutes.

**Note:** The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is off.

### Memory seats/power mirrors/steering wheel and adjustable pedals

The Intelligent Access key (IA key) allows you to recall the memory seat/power mirrors/steering wheel and adjustable pedals feature.

Press to automatically move the seat, mirrors, steering wheel and adjustable pedals to the desired memory position. **Note:** The seat will not travel to its final position if the key is not in the ignition and the easy entry feature is enabled.

#### *Activating the memory feature*

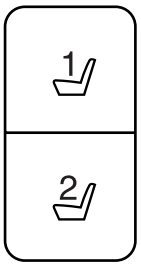
To activate this feature:

1. Position the seat, mirrors, steering wheel and adjustable pedals to the desired positions.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Press and hold either the 1 or 2 control on the driver's door for five seconds. (A tone will be heard after 1½ seconds when the memory store is done) continue to hold until a second tone is heard after five seconds.




3. Within three seconds press the control on the transmitter.

4. A tone will be heard when the activation is complete.

5. Repeat this procedure for another transmitter if desired.

### *Deactivating the memory feature*

To deactivate this feature:

1. Press and hold either the 1 or 2 control on the driver's door for five seconds. (A tone will be heard after 1½ seconds when the memory store is done) continue to hold until a second tone is heard after five seconds.

2. Within three seconds press the control on the transmitter.

3. A tone will be heard when the deactivation is complete.

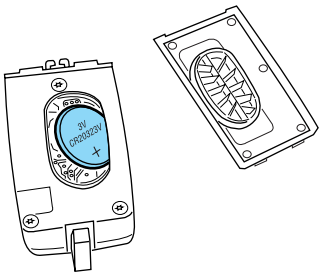
4. Repeat this procedure for another transmitter if desired.

### Replacing the battery

The Intelligent Access key (IA key) uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

To replace the battery:

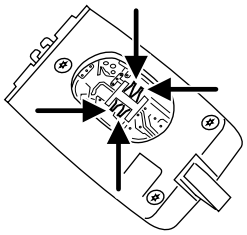
1. Remove the backup key from the transmitter, then twist a thin coin in the slot hidden behind the backup key slot to remove the battery cover.
**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Remove the old battery.
**Note:** Please refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.



3. Insert the new battery. Refer to the instructions inside the IA key for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.

4. Snap the battery cover back onto the transmitter and install the backup key.

**Note:** Replacement of the battery will **not** cause the IA key to become deprogrammed from your vehicle. They should operate normally after battery replacement.

### Replacing lost Intelligent Access Keys (IA keys)

If you would like to have your IA keys reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional transmitters you can either reprogram them yourself, or take **all transmitters** to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

#### *How to reprogram your Intelligent Access Keys (IA keys)*

To program a new IA keys yourself, refer to *SecuriLock® passive anti-theft* section of this chapter. **Note:** At least two already programmed transmitters are required to perform this procedure yourself.

### Illuminated entry

The interior lamps, parking lamps and puddle lamps (if equipped) illuminate when the IA key or the keyless entry keypad is used to unlock the door(s).

The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- the ignition is turned on, or
- the control on the transmitter is pressed, or
- the vehicle is locked using the keyless entry keypad, or
- if equipped with IA key, the vehicle is locked using the key in the driver door cylinder, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

### Illuminated exit

- When all vehicle doors are closed, the ignition is turned off , the interior dome lamps, parking lamps and puddle lamps (if equipped) will illuminate.

The lights will turn off if all the doors remain closed and

- 25 seconds elapse, or
- the start button is pressed.

#### *Battery saver*

The battery saver will shut off the lamps 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off.

- If the dome lamps were turned on using the panel dimmer control, the battery saver will shut them off 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off.
- If the courtesy lamps were turned on because one of the vehicle doors or the liftgate was opened, the battery saver will shut them off 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off.
- The battery saver will shut off the headlamps 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned off.

#### *Accessory mode battery saver for Intelligent Access Keys with Push Button Start*

The battery saver will shut off the ignition approximately 45 minutes after the vehicle is left in Accessory Mode, in order to preserve the vehicle's battery.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM

The keypad, located near the driver's window, is invisible until touched and then it lights up so you can see and touch the appropriate buttons. **Note:** If you enter your entry code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Re-enter your entry code more slowly.

You can use the keyless entry keypad to:

- lock or unlock the doors without using a key.
- recall memory seat/power mirrors and adjustable pedals (if equipped).
- enable or disable the autolock and autounlock features
- activate Intelligent Access at the driver door, refer to *Intelligent Access* in this chapter.




The keypad can be operated with the factory set 5–digit entry code; this code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from your authorized dealer. You can also create up to three of your own 5–digit personal entry codes.

**Note:** Your keypad will still function normally if you enter your personal entry code or factory set code. However, if your transmitter is within range of the driver's door, an Intelligent Access unlock will also occur each time you press any number on the keypad. Note that this additional unlock will not impact keypad functionality, and you can still enter your code and perform all keypad functions (unlock, lock, liftgate release).

### Programming a personal entry code and keypad association to memory seats, mirrors, and adjustable pedals

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory set code.

2. Within five seconds touch the 1 • 2 on the keypad.

3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. Each number must be entered within five seconds of each other.

4. For memory recall feature, enter the sixth digit 1 • 2 to store driver 1 settings or 3 • 4 to store driver 2 settings.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note:** Touching 5 • 6, 7 • 8, or 9 • 0 keypad numbers as a sixth digit will not recall a driver memory setting.
**Note:** The factory-set code cannot be associated with a memory setting.

5. The doors will lock then unlock to confirm that your personal entry code has been programmed to the module.

**Tips:**

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.

### Erasing personal code

1. Enter the factory set 5–digit code.
2. Within five seconds, press the 1 • 2 on the keypad and release.
3. Press and hold the 1 • 2 for two seconds. This must be done within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes are now erased and only the factory set 5–digit code will work.

### Anti-scan feature

If the wrong code has been entered seven times (35 consecutive button presses), the keypad will go into an anti-scan mode. This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity.
- pressing the control on your transmitter.
- the ignition is turned on.
- the door is unlocked with a key

### Unlocking and locking the doors using keyless entry

**To unlock the driver's door,** enter the factory set 5-digit code or your personal code. Each number must be pressed within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate. **Note:** If the two-stage unlocking feature is disabled, all doors will unlock; for more information regarding two-stage unlocking, refer to the *Central locking/Two stage unlocking* section earlier in this chapter.

**To unlock all doors,** enter the factory set code or your personal code, then press the 3 • 4 control within five seconds.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note:** If the Intelligent Access Key is within 3 feet (1 meter) of the driver door, your keyless entry keypad code will still function the same way, but the driver's door will also unlock with each keypad button press.

**To lock all doors,** press and hold the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 at the same time (with the driver's door closed) for two seconds will lock all doors. You **do not** need to enter the keypad code first.

## SECURILOCK® PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is an engine immobilization system. This system is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a **coded Intelligent Access Keys programmed to your vehicle** is used. The use of the wrong type of coded key may lead to a "no-start" condition.

Your vehicle comes with two coded Intelligent Access Keys; additional coded transmitters may be purchased from your authorized dealer. The authorized dealer can program your spare transmitters to your vehicle or you can program then yourself. Refer to *Programming spare Intelligent Access Keys* for instructions on how to program the coded key.

**Note:** The SecuriLock® passive anti-theft system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

**Note:** Large metallic objects, electronic devices that are used to purchase gasoline or similar items, or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues. You need to prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. These objects will not cause damage to the coded key, but may cause a momentary issue if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. If a problem occurs, turn the ignition off, remove all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine.

**Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.**

### Anti-theft indicator

The anti-theft indicator is located in the instrument panel cluster.

- When the ignition is off, the indicator will flash once every two seconds to indicate the SecuriLock® system is functioning as a theft deterrent.



### Automatic arming

The vehicle is armed immediately after turning the ignition off.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Automatic disarming

The vehicle is disarmed immediately after the ignition is turned on.

### Replacement Intelligent Access Keys

**Note:** Your vehicle comes equipped with two Intelligent Access Keys.

The Intelligent Access Key functions as both a programmed key that operates the driver door lock, activates Intelligent Access with Push Button Start systems as well as a remote keyless entry transmitter. A maximum of four Intelligent Access Keys can be programmed to your vehicle.

If your Intelligent Access Key are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new keys will need to be programmed.

Replacing Intelligent Access keys can be very costly. Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Please visit an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

### Programming spare Intelligent Access Keys

You must have two previously programmed Intelligent Access Keys inside the vehicle and the new unprogrammed Intelligent Access Keys readily accessible. If two previously programmed keys are not available, you must take your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the spare key(s) programmed.

**Note:** A maximum of four Intelligent Access Keys can be programmed to your vehicle. If you would like to replace a previously programmed access key with a new access key, or if you already have four access keys programmed to your vehicle, you must take your vehicle and all access keys to your authorized dealer to be erased and reprogrammed.

Ensure that the vehicle is off before beginning this procedure. Ensure that all doors are closed before beginning this procedure and that all doors remain closed throughout the procedure. Perform this procedure exactly as described below, and perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. If any steps are performed out of sequence, stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again.

Please read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Place the new unprogrammed Intelligent Access Key in the pocket inside the center console utility compartment.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Press the driver or passenger power door unlock control three times.

3. Press and release the brake pedal one time.

4. Press the driver or passenger power door lock control three times.

5. Press and release the brake pedal one time. The indicator on the Start/Stop button should begin to rapidly flash, indicating that programming mode has been entered and two programmed Intelligent Access Keys have been detected in the vehicle.

6. Within one minute, press the start/stop button. A message will be displayed on the message center indicating that the new Intelligent Access Key was programmed. If four Intelligent Access Keys have already been programmed to your vehicle, you cannot program anymore and the message MAX # OF KEYS LEARNED will be displayed on the message center.

7. Remove Intelligent Access Key from utility compartment pocket and press the or control on the newly programmed Intelligent Access Keys to exit programming mode.

8. Verify that the remote entry functions operate (lock, unlock) and that the vehicle starts with new Intelligent Access Key.

If the Intelligent Access Key has been successfully programmed, it can be used to activate the Intelligent Access with Push Button Start feature and can be used to start your vehicle.

**Note:** To program MyKey™ features, refer to *MyKey™* in this chapter.

### MYKEY™

The MyKey™ feature allows you to program a restricted driving mode to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated as a MyKey™. The key will remain restricted until MyKey™ is disabled. Any remaining keys are referred to as an "Administrator key" or Admin key. The Admin key can be used to create a MyKey™, program optional MyKey™ settings, and disable the MyKey™ feature. When the MyKey™ feature is enabled the user can use System Check in the message center to see how many MyKeys™ and Admin keys are programmed to the vehicle, and how many total miles have been driven with the MyKey™ active.

#### MyKey™ Restricted Features

**Standard settings – These settings cannot be changed**

- The audio system will be muted whenever Belt-Minder® is activated until the safety belts are buckled. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for a detailed description of Belt-Minder® operation.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Low fuel warnings are displayed in the message center followed by a chime when the Distance to Empty value reaches 75 miles (120 km).
- The Reverse sensing system, Blind Spot Information System (BLIS®) with Cross Traffic Alert and Collision Warning system cannot be turned off.

**Optional settings – These settings can be changed**

- Vehicle speed is limited to 80 mph (130 km/h). Visual warnings are displayed followed by a chime when the vehicle speed has reached 80 mph (130 km/h).
- Visual warnings are displayed followed by a chime when a preselected vehicle speed of 45, 55 or 65 mph (75, 90, or 105 km/h) is exceeded
- The maximum volume of the audio system is limited to 45%. MYKEY VOLUME LIMITED will be displayed in the radio or (if equipped) navigation screen when attempting to exceed the limited volume
- The AdvanceTrac® system cannot be turned off. When this optional setting is on, the MyKey™ user will not be able to deactivate the system. **Note:** It may be beneficial to deactivate the AdvanceTrac® system if the vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand.

**Create a MyKey™**

To program MyKey™ on one of the keys programmed to the vehicle, insert the key that you want to make a MyKey™ into the ignition. (For vehicles equipped with push button start, put the Intelligent Access Key in the backup slot; see the *Driving* chapter for the location of the backup slot.) Turn the ignition on. Use the message center buttons to do the following:

1. Press SETUP until PRESS RESET TO CREATE MYKEY is displayed.
2. Press and release the RESET button. HOLD RESET TO CONFIRM MYKEY will be displayed.
3. Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds until MARK THIS AS RESTRICTED is displayed.
4. Wait until KEY RESTRICTED AT NEXT START is displayed.

MyKey™ is successfully programmed. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the Admin keys. **Note:** To program the optional settings go to step 2 in the *Programming MyKey™ Optional Settings* section. If your vehicle is equipped with remote start, see the *Using MyKey™ with Remote Start Systems* section.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note:** The MyKey™ can be cleared within the same key cycle that it was created, otherwise a standard key (Administrator key) is required to disable the MyKey™ programming. To clear all MyKeys™ go to Step 2 in the *Disable MyKey*™ section.

**Programming MyKey™ Optional Settings**

With an Admin key in the backup slot, turn the ignition on; To program the optional settings, use the message center buttons to do the following:

1. Press SETUP until RESET FOR MYKEY SETUP is displayed.

2. Press and release the RESET button to display MyKey setup menus. The first menu shown is:

   MYKEY MAX MPH <80 MPH> OFF

3. If you don't want to change the maximum speed setting, press the SETUP button to display the next menu. The remaining menus appear as follows with the default settings shown:

   MYKEY MPH TONES 45 55 65 <OFF>
   MYKEY VOLUME LIMIT <ON> OFF
   MYKEY ADVTRAC CTRL ON <OFF>.

4. On any of the menus press RESET to highlight your choice with the <…>.

5. Press SETUP to enter your choice. The next optional setting will be displayed.

6. Repeat Steps 4 and 5 until you are done changing the optional settings.

**Disable MyKey™**

To reset all MyKeys™ as Admin keys do the following:

1. With an Admin key in the backup slot, turn the ignition on.

2. Press SETUP until PRESS RESET TO CLEAR MYKEY is displayed.

3. Press and release the RESET button. HOLD RESET TO CONFIRM CLEAR is displayed.

4. Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds until ALL MYKEYS CLEARED is displayed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Check MyKey™ System Status

The vehicle System Check will provide the status of the following MyKey™ parameters:

- MYKEY MILES — This odometer only tracks mileage when a MyKey™ is used. If mileage does not accumulate as expected, then the MyKey™ is not being used by the intended user. The only way to reset this odometer to zero is by disabling MyKey™. If this odometer is lower than the last time you checked, then the MyKey™ system has been recently cleared.
- # MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED — Indicates how many MyKeys™ are programmed to the vehicle. Can be used to detect deletion of a MyKey™.
- # ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED — Indicates how many Admin keys are programmed to the vehicle. Can be used to detect if an additional spare key has been programmed to the vehicle

Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for MyKey™ system warnings displays.

### Using MyKey™ with Remote Start Systems

MyKey™ is not compatible with non-Ford approved aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system please see your authorized dealer for a Ford approved remote start system.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

***Intelligent Access Key (push button start)***

- It is not possible to program the remote start system as MyKey™ on vehicles equipped with Intelligent Access Key (push button start). Therefore, you should treat the remote start fob as you would any other admin key. When the vehicle is started using remote start, the system will stall the engine when you either enter the vehicle or shift the vehicle into gear. Prior to the engine stall, the vehicle will have administrative privileges. When you restart the engine, the vehicle will identify the user as an Admin or MyKey™ driver depending on the settings of the actual key used to start the vehicle.

**Note:** For all vehicles, the number of MYKEY(S) PROGRAMMED or ADMIN KEYS PROGRAMMED that is displayed in the MyKey™ System Status menus will include the remote start system as an additional key in the total count. See the *Check MyKey™ System Status* section.

**Note:** For all vehicles with remote start installed, it is possible to program all 'real' keys as MyKeys™, in which case, you will need to use your remote start system to reset all MyKeys™ as Admin keys by doing the following:

1. Enter the vehicle, close all doors.
2. Remote start the vehicle using your remote start fob.
3. Follow steps 1-4 in the *Disable MyKey™* section.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Troubleshooting**

| Condition | Potential Causes |
|---|---|
| Can't create a MyKey™ | • Key in the backup slot is already a MyKey™.<br>• Key in the backup slot is the last remaining Admin key (there always has to be at least one Admin key).<br>• Intelligent Access Key (if equipped) not in the backup slot (for vehicles with push button start).<br>•SecuriLock® Passive Anti-Theft System is disabled or in unlimited mode<br>• Vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is programmed as MyKey™. Refer to *MyKey™ with Remote Start Systems* section. |
| Cannot program the MyKey™ optional settings | • Key in the backup slot is a MyKey™<br>• No MyKeys™ are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to *Create a MyKey™* section<br>• Vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is programmed as MyKey™. Refer to *MyKey™ with Remote Start Systems* section. |
| Cannot disable MyKey™ | • Key in the backup slot is a MyKey™<br>• No MyKeys™ are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to *Create a MyKey™* section<br>• Vehicle has been started using a remote start system that is programmed as MyKey™. Refer to *MyKey™ with Remote Start Systems* section. |
| Lost the only Admin key | • Purchase a new key from your authorized dealer |





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Condition | Potential Causes |
|---|---|
| Lost any key | • For programming spare keys, refer to the *Programming spare keys* section in this chapter. |
| I accidentally programmed all keys as MyKeys™ | • Vehicle has a remote start system that is recognized as an Admin key. Refer to the *Using MyKey™ with Remote Start Systems* section to reset all MyKeys™ as Admin keys. |
| No MyKey™ function with Intelligent Access Key (push button start) | • An Admin Key is present at vehicle start<br>• No MyKeys™ are programmed to the vehicle. Refer to *Create a MyKey™* section |
| MyKey™ Programmed total includes one additional key | • Unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as a MyKey™.<br>• Vehicle is equipped with a remote start system. Refer to *MyKey™ with Remote Start Systems* section. |
| Admin Keys Programmed total includes one additional key | • Unknown key has been programmed to the vehicle as Admin key.<br>• Vehicle is equipped with a remote start system. Refer to *MyKey™ with Remote Start Systems* section. |
| MyKey™ miles do not accumulate | • MyKey™ is not being used by the intended user.<br>• MyKey™ system has been recently cleared. |

## PERIMETER ALARM SYSTEM

The perimeter anti-theft system will help protect your vehicle from unauthorized entry.

If there is any potential perimeter anti-theft problem with your vehicle, ensure **ALL Intelligent Access Keys** are brought to the authorized dealer to aid in troubleshooting.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Arming the system

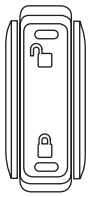
When armed, this system will respond if unauthorized entry is attempted. When unauthorized entry occurs, the system will flash the turn signal lamps and will sound the horn.

The system is ready to arm whenever the ignition is off. Any of the following actions will prearm the alarm system:

- Press the control on the transmitter.

When you press the lock control twice within three seconds on your transmitter, the horn will chirp once to let you know that all doors, the hood and the liftgate are closed. If any of these are not closed, the horn will chirp twice to warn you that a door, the hood or the liftgate is still open.

- Press the driver or passenger power door lock control while the door is open, then close the door.



- Press and hold the 7 • 8 and 9 • 0 controls on the keyless entry pad at the same time to lock the doors (driver's door must be closed).
- Lock the door by turning the key in the door key cylinder.




There is a 20 second countdown when any of the above actions occur before the vehicle becomes armed.

Each door, the hood or the liftgate is armed individually, and if any are open, they must be closed for that entry point to enter the 20 second countdown.

The turn signal lamps will flash once when all doors, the hood or the liftgate are closed indicating the vehicle is locked and entering the 20 second countdown.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Disarming the system

You can disarm the system by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors by using your transmitter.
- Unlock the doors by using your keyless entry pad.
- Unlock the driver door or all doors using the Intelligent Access.
- Unlock the driver's door with a key. Turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to make sure the alarm disarms.
- Turn ignition on.
- Press the control on the transmitter. This will only shut off the horn and parking lamps when the alarm is sounding. The alarm system will still be armed.

Pressing the power door unlock control within the 20 second prearmed mode will return the vehicle to a disarmed state.

#### *Triggering the anti-theft system*

The armed system will be triggered if:

- Any door, the hood or the liftgate is opened without using the door key, keypad or Intelligent Access Key.
- Turn the ignition on with an invalid SecuriLock® key.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## SEATING

**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

**WARNING:** Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.

**WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

**WARNING:** Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

**WARNING:** The adjustable head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied.

**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, head restraints must be installed properly.

### First-row adjustable head restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with front row outboard head restraints that are vertically adjustable.

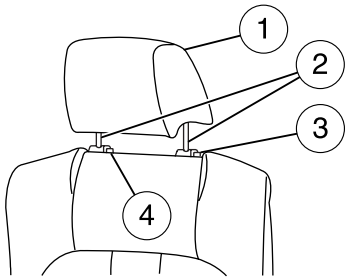




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The adjustable head restraints consist of:

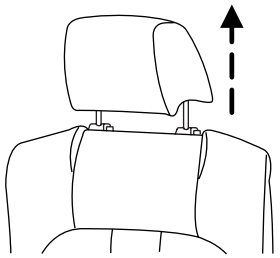
- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- a guide sleeve adjust/release button (3),
- and a guide sleeve unlock/remove button (4).



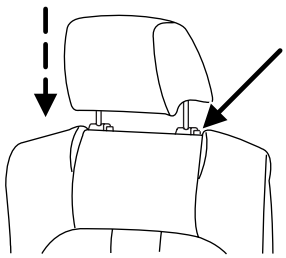

To adjust the head restraint, do the following:

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position. Refer to *Adjusting the front manual seat* later in this chapter.

2. Raise the head restraint by pulling up on the head restraint.



3. Lower the head restraint by pressing and holding the guide sleeve adjust/release button and pushing down on the head restraint.



Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.

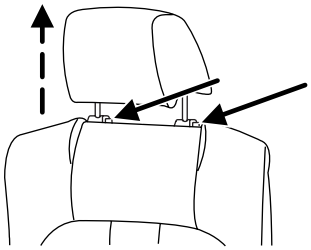


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To remove the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches the highest adjustment position.

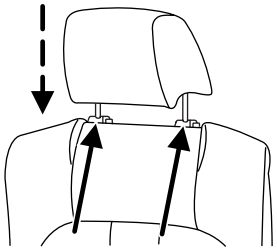
2. Simultaneously press and hold both the adjust/release button and the unlock/remove button, then pull up on the head restraint.



To reinstall the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Insert the two stems into the guide sleeve collars.

2. Push the head restraint down until it locks.



Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.



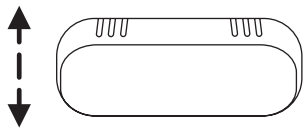


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

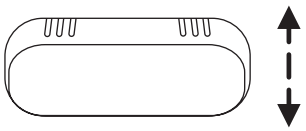
### Adjusting the front power seat

#### *Ten-way power seats*

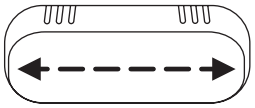
Move the front of the control up or down to tilt the seat cushion.



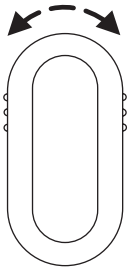
Move the rear of the control up or down to raise or lower the seat cushion.



Move the control in the directions shown to move the seat forward or backward.



Press the control to recline the seatback forward or rearward.





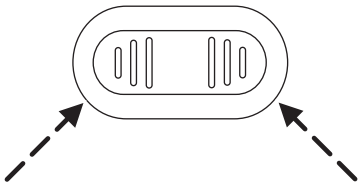
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Using the two-way power lumbar support (if equipped)*

The power lumbar control is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Press the forward side of the control to adjust firmness.

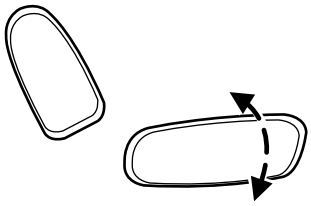
Press the rearward side of the control to adjust softness.



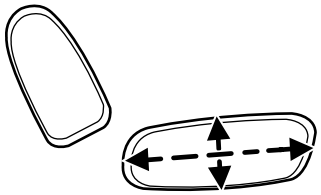
### *Twelve-way power seat*

The control is located on the outboard side of the seat cushion.

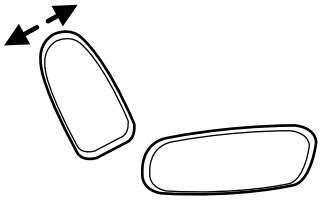
Press the front portion to tilt the seat.



Press the control to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.



Press the control to recline the seatback forward or rearward.







Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Using the four-way power lumbar support (if equipped)*

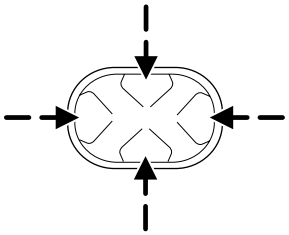
The lumbar control is located on the side of the seat cushion.

Press the front of the control to adjust firmness.

Press the rear of the control to adjust softness.

Press the top of the control to raise the height of the lumbar support.

Press the bottom of the control to lower the height of the lumbar support.



## Front-row heated and cooled seats

### Heated seats

**WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

**Note:** Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

The heated seats will only function when the engine is running.

To operate the heated seats:

Press once to activate the high heat setting (three indicator lights). Continue pressing to scroll through the other settings; medium heat (two indicator lights), low heat (one indicator light) or off.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The heated seats will turn off after 15 minutes.

If the engine falls below 350 RPMs while the heated seats are on, the feature will turn itself off and will need to be reactivated.

**Cooled seats**

The cooled seats will only function when the engine is running.

To operate the cooled seats:

Press once to activate the high cool setting (three indicator lights). Continue pressing to scroll through the other settings; medium cool (two indicator lights), low cool (one indicator light) or off.



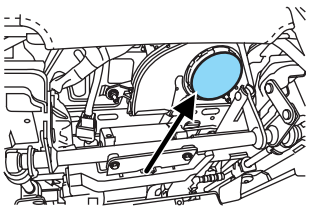

The cooled seats will turn off after 30 minutes.

If the engine falls below 350 RPMs while the cooled seats are on, the feature will turn itself off and will need to be reactivated.

### *Climate controlled seats air filter replacement*

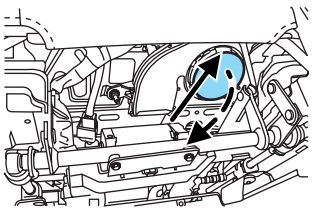
The climate controlled seat system includes air filters that must be replaced periodically. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

- There is a filter located under the rear of each front seat which can be accessed from the second row seat. Move the front seats all the way forward and up to ease access.



To remove the air filter:

1. Remove key from ignition.
2. Push up on the outside rigid edge of the filter and rotate toward the front of the vehicle once tabs are released.
3. Remove filter.



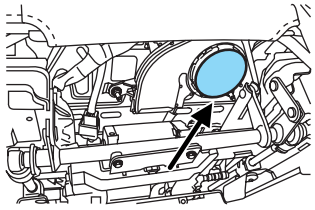




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

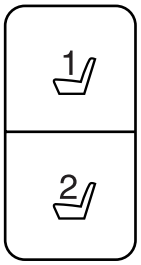
To install the filter:

- Position the filter in it's housing making sure that the far forward end is all the way up in the housing then push in on the center of the outside edge of the filter and rotate up into the housing until it clips into position.



### Memory seat/power mirrors/adjustable pedals (if equipped)/steering column

This system allows automatic positioning of the driver seat, outside rearview mirrors and adjustable pedals to two programmable positions.




The memory seat control is located on the driver door.

- To program position one, move the driver seat, exterior mirrors and adjustable pedals to the desired positions using the associated controls. Press and hold control button 1 for at least two seconds. A tone will be heard when the memory save is complete.
- To program position two, repeat the previous procedure using control button 2.

A position can only be recalled when the transmission gearshift is in Park (automatic transmission). A memory seat position may be programmed at any time.

The memory seat positions are also recalled when you press your remote entry transmitter (unlock) control and the transmitter is programmed to a memory seat position or when you enter a valid customer code 1 or 2 on the keypad.

To program the memory seat to remote entry transmitter, refer to *Remote entry system* in the *Locks and Security chapter.*.

**Note: The seat will not travel to its final position if the key is not in the ignition and the easy entry feature is enabled.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Easy access/easy out feature

This feature automatically moves the driver's seat rearward 2 in (5 cm) when:

- the transmission is in N (Neutral) or P (Park)
- the ignition is turned off

The seat will move to the original position when:

- the transmission is in N (Neutral) or P (Park)
- the ignition is put in accessory mode

The easy entry feature can be turned off or on through the vehicle message center. Refer to *Message center* in the *Driver controls* chapter.

## REAR SEATS

### Non-adjustable second-row outboard head restraints

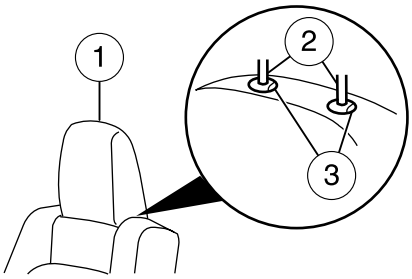
Your vehicle is equipped with second row outboard head restraints that are non-adjustable.

**Note:** Please read the warnings listed at the beginning of this chapter.

#### *Six-passenger second row outboard head restraints*

The non-adjustable head restraints consist of :

- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- and two guide sleeve unlock/remove buttons (3).



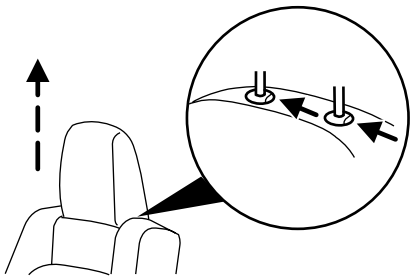





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

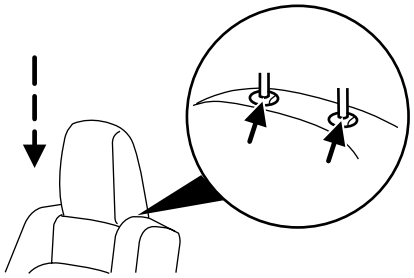
To remove the non-adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Simultaneously press and hold both unlock/remove buttons, then pull up on the head restraint.



To reinstall the non-adjustable head restraint, do the following:

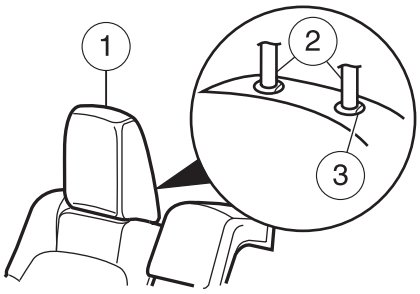
1. Insert the two stems into the guide sleeve collars.
2. Push the head restraint down until it locks.



***Seven-passenger second row outboard head restraints***

The non-adjustable head restraints consist of :

- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- and one guide sleeve unlock/remove button (3).

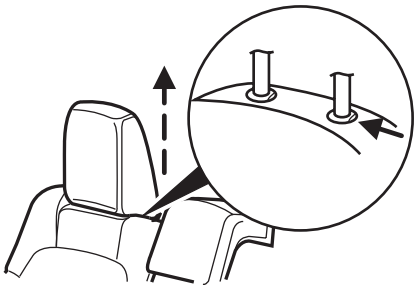





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

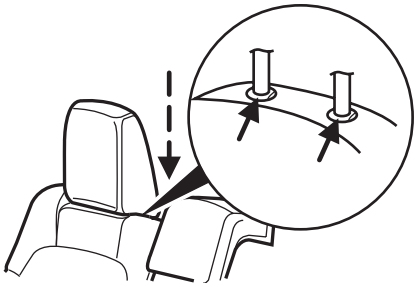
To remove the non-adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Press and hold the unlock/remove button, then pull up on the head restraint.



To reinstall the non-adjustable head restraint, do the following:

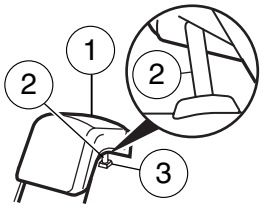
1. Insert the two stems into the guide sleeve collars.
2. Push the head restraint down until it locks.



### Adjustable second row center head restraint (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a head restraint in the second row center seating position that is vertically adjustable.

The adjustable head restraint consist of :




- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- a guide sleeve adjust/release button (3),
- and a guide sleeve unlock/remove button (4).

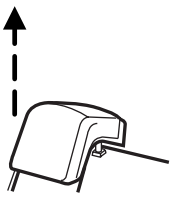




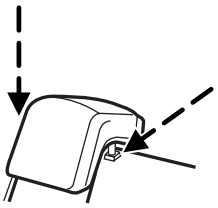
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To adjust the head restraint, do the following:

1. Raise the head restraint by pulling up on the head restraint.



2. Lower the head restraint by pressing and holding the guide sleeve adjust/release button and pushing down on the head restraint.

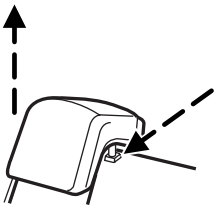


Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.

To remove the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches the highest adjustment position.

2. Press and hold both the adjust/release button, then pull up on the head restraint.



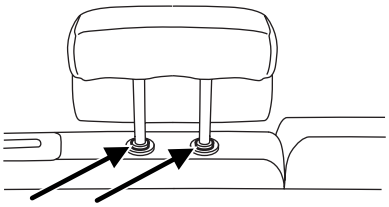




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To reinstall the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Insert the two stems into the guide sleeve collars.
2. Push the head restraint down until it locks.

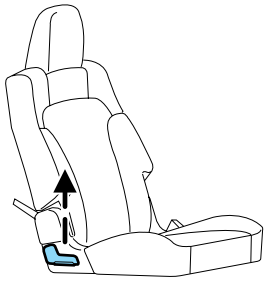


Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.

### *Adjusting second row bucket and bench seat back*

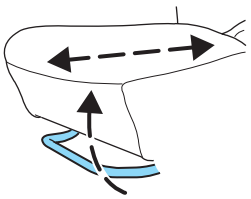
Lift the handle to adjust seatback. Using same control will fold the seatback flat.

**Note:** For the bench seat only, make sure the center safety belt is unbuckled before folding the seatback.



### *Adjusting second row seats (six-passenger vehicles only)*

Lift the control to adjust the seat forward or backward.





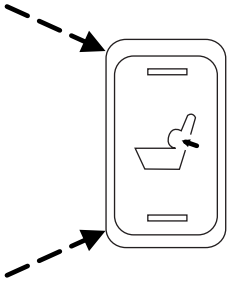
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Using the second-row power lumbar support (six-passenger vehicles only)*

The power lumbar control is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Press the forward side of the control to adjust firmness.

Press the rearward side of the control to adjust softness.

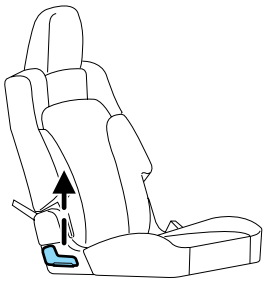


### *Accessing the third row seats*

Fold and tumble the second row seat to access the third row. Remove items from the second row seat and ensure that no bulky objects such as purses or briefcases are on the floor in front of the second row seats before tumbling them. For second row bench seats, make sure the center safety belt is unbuckled before folding the seatback.

**Note:** You may have to move the front row seat forward to allow the 2nd row seat to be fully tumbled.

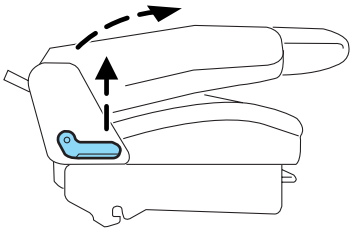
1. Lift the handle located on the side of the seat.



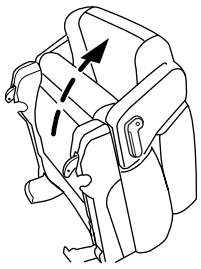


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

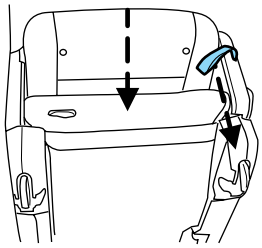
The seatback will fold flat.



2. Lift the handle all the way up until the seat releases from the floor. Rotate the seat forward to allow access to the third row.



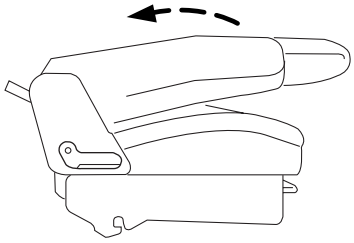
3. To return the seatback to the floor from tumbled position, rotate the seat down until you hear it latching to the floor.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. To return the seatback to the upright position



- Lift the seatback toward the rear of the vehicle, and
- Rotate the seatback until you hear a click, locking it in the upright position.

**Note:** The seatback will not raise if the rear latch hooks are not properly engaged to the floor striker. If the seatback does not raise, then repeat steps 3 and 4.

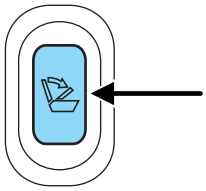
5. If the seat has a head restraint, pull the head restraint back up to its normal adjusted position.

### *2nd row PowerFold® and tumble seat*

**WARNING:** Ensure that the seat is unoccupied when folding it down. Folding the seat while occupied could result in occupant injury or damage to the seat.

This feature is available for the right-hand seat on seven-passenger vehicles and on both sides for six-passenger vehicles.

Press the control located at the back of the rear door opening one time to fold the seat back down and tumble the seat forward for access to the 3rd row.



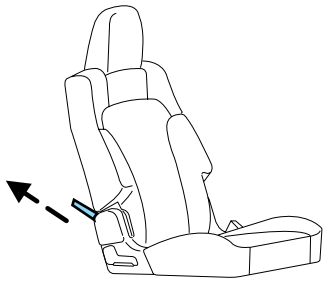
### *Exiting the third row seat*

1. Stow the second row center head restraint (if equipped) by pressing the head restraint release button while sliding the head restraint fully down.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Pull on the strap located on the back of the second row seat. This will fold the seatback forward. Pull the strap a second time to tumble the seat forward, allowing easy exit from the 3rd row seat.

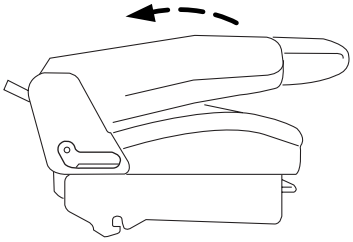


3. To return the seatback to the floor from tumbled position, rotate the seat down until you hear it latching to the floor.



4. To return the seatback to the upright position

- Lift the seatback toward the rear of the vehicle, and
- Rotate the seatback until you hear a click, locking it in the upright position.



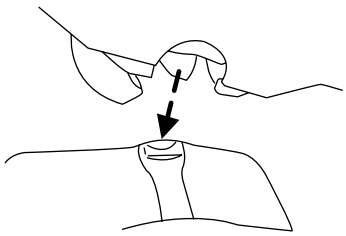
**Note:** The seatback will not raise if the rear latch hooks are not properly engaged to the floor striker. If the seatback does not raise, then repeat steps 3 and 4.

5. If the seat has a head restraint, pull the head restraint back up to its normal adjusted position.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ensure that the rear latch hooks are properly engaged with the floor striker.



**Note**: Ensure that the seat and seatback are latched securely in position. Keep floor area free of objects that would prevent proper seat engagement.

**WARNING:** Do not adjust or release the seat floor latch while vehicle is in motion. Do not operate the vehicle with seats in tumbled position. Always latch the vehicle seat to the floor, whether the seat is occupied or empty. If not latched or if the seat is tumbled, the seat may cause injury during a sudden stop.

### Second row heated seats (if equipped)

**Note:** For a list of warnings regarding personal injury and damage to the seat, refer to *Front-row heated and cooled seats* earlier in this chapter.

To operate the heated seats:



- Press the button located on the rear of the floor console once to activate high heat.
- Press twice to activate low heat.
- Press a third time to deactivate.

The indicator light on the control will illuminate when activated. For low heat, one light will be lit; for high heat, both lights will be lit.

### Second-row heated and cooled seats (if equipped)

**Note:** For a list of warnings regarding personal injury and damage to the seat, refer to *Front-row heated and cooled seats* earlier in this chapter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The second-row heated and cooled seat controls are located on the rear of the floor console. They function the same as the front-row heated and cooled seats. For instructions on how to use refer to *Front-row heated and cooled seats* earlier in this chapter.

### *Second-row climate controlled seats air filter replacement*

The climate controlled seat system includes air filters that must be replaced periodically. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

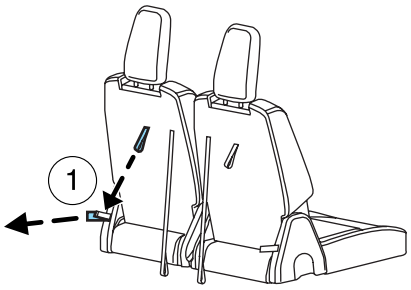
There is an air filter located under the rear of each second-row seat. You can tumble the seat forward to access the filter.

For instructions on how to remove and install the air filter, see *Climate controlled seats air filter replacement* earlier in this chapter.

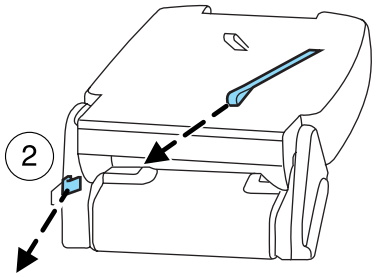
### Stowing the third row seat

1. Remove all objects from the seat and stowage tub.

2. From the rear of the vehicle, stow the head restraints by pulling the strap located on the middle of the seatback just below the head restraint, then fold seatback by pulling and holding the number 1 strap while pushing the seatback forward. Release strap once seatback starts rotating forward.




3. Release the cushion latches by pulling the number 2 strap while pulling on the strap located at the top of the seatback to tumble the seat all the way into the tub in the floor.

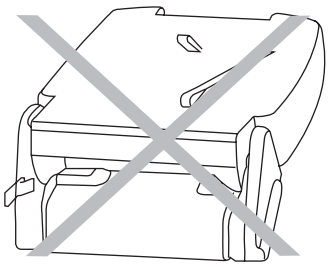



**Note:** Do not use the seat anchors as cargo tie downs.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note:** Do not use the third row seatback as a load floor when the seatback is folded.



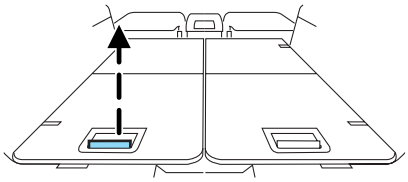
**Note:** In order to allow the seat to latch in the stowed position, do not stow objects under the seat before stowing.

### *Unstowing the third row seat*

**Note:** Ensure that there are no objects such as books, purses or brief cases on the load floor before unstowing the seat. Failure to remove all objects from the top of the load floor prior to unstowing it may cause damage to the seat.

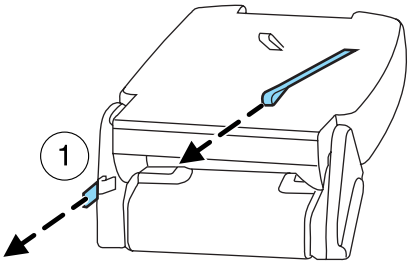
**Note:** Ensure the area under the forward portion of the load floor is free of objects before unstowing the third row seat.

1. Unlatch and lift the seat out of the tub in the floor by squeezing and pulling up on the handle. Once the seat is at a vertical position, push the seat over, letting it fall onto the latches.



2. To return the seatback to upright position, pull the number 1 strap, then while holding the number 1 strap, pull the long strap located on the seatback to raise the seatback.

3. Pull the head restraints up to their normal adjusted positions.

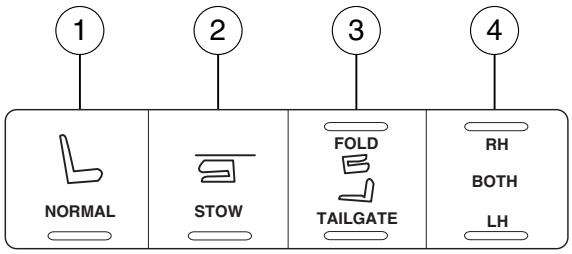





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Ensure the seat is latched to vehicle floor by pushing/pulling on seat. If not latched, the seat may cause injury during a sudden stop.

***Third row power seats (if equipped)***




The third row power seat buttons are located behind the third row seats on the left-hand quarter trim panel.

**Note:** In order to allow the seat to latch in the stowed position, do not stow objects under the seat before stowing, and remove all objects from the seat and stowage tub.

1. Press the button to return the seat to the normal seating position.

2. Press the button to stow the third row seat into the tub floor.

3. Press the top portion of the button to fold down the seat back, or press the bottom portion of the button to put the seat into the tailgate position.

4. Press the button to select either the right-hand seat, the left-hand seat or both.

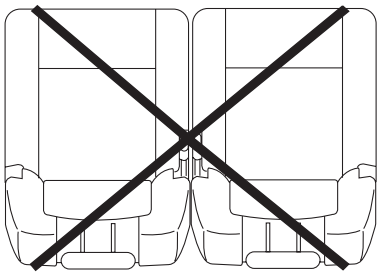
**Note:** Ensure that there are no objects such as books, purses or brief cases on the load floor before unstowing the seat. Failure to remove all objects from the top of the load floor prior to unstowing it may cause damage to the seat.

**Note:** Ensure the area under the forward portion of the load floor is free of objects before unstowing the third row seat.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Do not drive the vehicle when the third row seat is rotated backwards. During a sudden stop, the safety belts are not functional in this position, and during a sudden stop, the third row seat can rapidly tip back to the forward position, all of which may result in serious injury.



### *Closing the liftgate*

**WARNING:** To avoid injury to third row occupants when closing the liftgate, ensure that the head of any occupant is not in the path of the closing liftgate.

## SAFETY RESTRAINTS

### Personal Safety System™

The Personal Safety System™ provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

Your vehicle's Personal Safety System™ consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front outboard safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors (first row only), and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver's seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system
- "Passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp
- Front crash severity sensor.
- Restraints Control Module (RCM) with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and back-up tone.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system, and indicator lights.

### *How does the Personal Safety System™ work?*

The Personal Safety System™ can adapt the deployment strategy of your vehicle's safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the Restraints Control Module (RCM). During a crash, the RCM activates the safety belt pretensioners and/or either one or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

The fact that the pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the Personal Safety System™ determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices. Front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration. The pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, and in side collisions and rollovers.

### *Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints*

The dual-stage airbags offer the capability to tailor the level of airbag inflation energy. A lower, less forceful energy level is provided for more common, moderate-severity impacts. A higher energy level is used for the most severe impacts. Refer to *Airbag supplemental restraints (SRS)* section in this chapter.

### *Front crash severity sensor*

The front crash severity sensor enhances the ability to detect the severity of an impact. Positioned up front, it provides valuable information early in the crash event on the severity of the impact. This allows your Personal Safety System™ to distinguish between different levels of crash severity and modify the deployment strategy of the dual-stage airbags and safety belt pretensioners.

### *Driver's seat position sensor*

The driver's seat position sensor allows your Personal Safety System™ to tailor the deployment level of the driver dual-stage airbag based on seat position. The system is designed to help protect smaller drivers sitting close to the driver airbag by providing a lower airbag output level.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Front passenger sensing system*

For airbags to do their job they must inflate with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk to occupants that are very close to the airbag when it begins to inflate. For some occupants, this occurs because they are initially sitting very close to the airbag. For other occupants, this occurs when the occupant is not properly restrained by safety belts or child safety seats and they move forward during pre-crash braking. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary injuries is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are much safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front.

The front passenger sensing system can automatically turn off the passenger front airbag. The system is designed to help protect small (child size) occupants from airbag deployments when they are improperly seated or restrained in the front passenger seat contrary to proper child-seating or restraint usage recommendations. Even with this technology, parents are **STRONGLY** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag and seat-mounted side airbag when the passenger seat is empty to prevent unnecessary replacement of airbag(s) after a collision.

For warnings about properly restraining children, refer to *Important SRS precautions* later in this chapter.

### *Front safety belt usage sensors*

The front safety belt usage sensors detect whether or not the driver and front outboard passenger safety belts are fastened. This information allows your Personal Safety System™ to tailor the airbag deployment and safety belt pretensioner activation depending upon safety belt usage.

### *Front safety belt pretensioners*

The safety belt pretensioners at the front outboard seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body during frontal collisions, and in side collisions and rollovers. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal collisions, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the collision is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Front safety belt energy management retractors*

The front outboard safety belt energy management retractors allow webbing to be pulled out of the retractor in a gradual and controlled manner in response to the occupant's forward momentum. This helps reduce the risk of force-related injuries to the occupant's chest by limiting the load on the occupant. Refer to *Energy management feature- front outboard* section in this chapter.

### *Determining if the Personal Safety System™ is operational*

The Personal Safety System® uses a warning light in the instrument cluster or a back-up tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Warning lights and chimes* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the Personal Safety System™ is not required.

The Restraints Control Module (RCM) monitors its own internal circuits and the circuits for the airbag supplemental restraints, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt buckle sensors, driver seat position sensor, and front passenger sensing system. In addition, the RCM also monitors the restraints warning light in the instrument cluster. A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following.

- The warning light will either flash or stay lit.
- The warning light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and warning light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the Personal Safety System™ serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### Safety belt precautions

**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.

**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

**WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

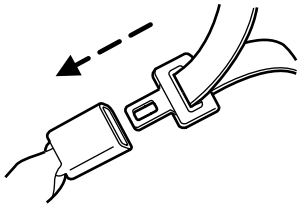
**WARNING:** Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.



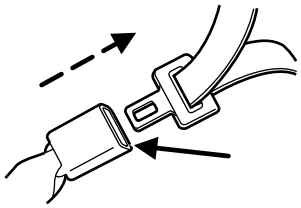
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Combination lap and shoulder belts

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

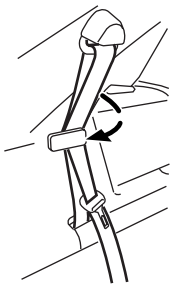


All restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.

While you are fastened in the safety belt, the combination lap/shoulder belt adjusts to your movement. However, if you brake hard, turn hard, or if your vehicle receives an impact of 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the safety belt will become locked and help reduce your forward movement.

### Third-row safety belt stowage

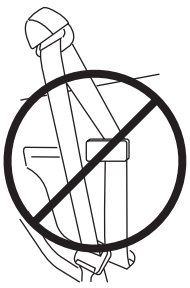
To stow the safety belt, grasp both portions of shoulder belt together in one hand and slide into the safety belt stowage clip as shown.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Both the outer and inner shoulder belts must be kept in the stowage clip together to prevent the potential of wrinkling the cargo shade.



**WARNING:** Do not stow only one portion of the shoulder belt in the stowage clip. Wearing the shoulder belt in this condition increases the amount of belt slack and may reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in the event of a collision.

### Energy management feature — front outboard

- This vehicle has a safety belt system with an energy management feature at the front seats to help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a head-on collision.
- The energy management feature has a retractor assembly that is designed to extend the safety belt webbing in a controlled manner. This helps reduce the belt force acting on the user's chest.

**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and replace if necessary the belt and retractor assembly after an accident could increase the risk of injury in a collision.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. All of the passenger combination lap and shoulder belts have three types of locking modes described below:

### Vehicle sensitive mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Webbing extraction sensitive mode

The webbing sensitive locking mode locks the webbing and prevents more belt from being pulled out if the belt is pulled out too quickly. The belt will unlock when you stop pulling on it.

### Automatic locking mode

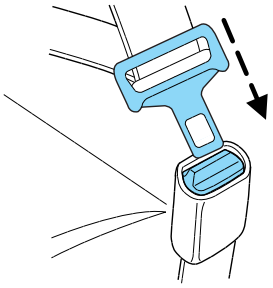
#### *When to use the automatic locking mode*

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat (except a booster) is installed in a passenger front or rear seating position with a combination lap/shoulder safety belt. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

#### *How to use the automatic locking mode*

- Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.



- Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.



- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

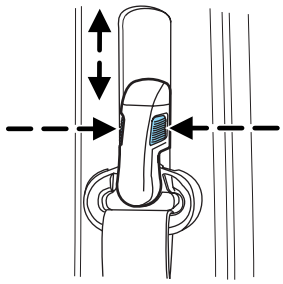
### *How to disengage the automatic locking mode*

**WARNING:** Ford Motor Company recommends that all passenger safety belt assemblies and attaching hardware should be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision to verify that the ″automatic locking retractor″ feature for child seats is still working properly. Safety belt assemblies should be inspected by an authorized dealer and must be replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Unbuckle the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

### Front safety belt height adjustment

Your vehicle has safety belt height adjustments at the front outboard seating positions. Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.



To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze and hold the buttons on the side and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the buttons and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

**WARNING:** Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

### Safety belt pretensioner

Your vehicle is equipped with safety belt pretensioners at the driver and front outboard passenger seating positions.

The safety belt pretensioner tightens the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body at the start of the crash.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** The driver and front passenger safety belt system (including retractors, buckles and height adjusters) must be replaced if the vehicle is involved in a collision that results in deployment of front airbags, seat-mounted side airbags and Safety Canopy®, and safety belt pretensioners.

### Safety belt extension assembly

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, there is an 8 inch (20 cm) safety belt extension assembly that can be added (part number 611C22). This assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

### Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

#### *Conditions of operation*

| If... | Then... |
|---|---|
| The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position... | The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds. |
| The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding... | The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off. |
| The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position... | The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off. |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Belt-Minder®

The Belt-Minder® feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster when the driver's and front passenger's safety belt is unbuckled.

The Belt-Minder® feature uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder® feature for objects placed in the front passenger seat, warnings will only be given to large front seat occupants as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

Both the driver's and passenger's safety belt usages are monitored and either may activate the Belt-Minder® feature. The warnings are the same for the driver and the front passenger. If the Belt-Minder® warnings have expired (warnings for approximately five minutes) for one occupant (driver or front passenger), the other occupant can still activate the Belt-Minder® feature.

**Note:** If you are using MyKey™, the Belt-Minder® warning will not expire. Refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and security* chapter.

| If... | Then... |
|---|---|
| The driver's and front passenger's safety belts are buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position or less than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on... | The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate. |
| The driver's or front passenger's safety belt is not buckled when the vehicle has reached at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on... | The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled. |
| The driver's or front passenger's safety belt becomes unbuckled for approximately one minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on... | The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled. |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts (All statistics based on U.S. data):

| Reasons given... | Consider... |
|---|---|
| "Crashes are rare events" | **36700 crashes occur every day.** The more we drive, the more we are exposed to "rare" events, even for good drivers. *1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.* |
| "I'm not going far" | **3 of 4** fatal crashes occur within **25** miles (40 km) of home. |
| "Belts are uncomfortable" | We design our safety belts to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort. |
| "I was in a hurry" | **Prime time for an accident.** Belt-Minder® reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up. |
| "Safety belts don't work" | **Safety belts,** when used properly, **reduce risk of death** to front seat occupants by **45% in cars,** and by **60% in light trucks.** |
| "Traffic is light" | **Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes,** many when no other vehicles are around. |
| "Belts wrinkle my clothes" | Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted. |
| "The people I'm with don't wear belts" | Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see. |





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Reasons given... | Consider... |
|---|---|
| "I have an airbag" | Airbags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers. |
| "I'd rather be thrown clear" | Not a good idea. **People** who are **ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE.** Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN'T "PICK OUR CRASH". |

**WARNING:** Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt or insert a latchplate into the buckle to avoid the Belt-Minder® chime. To do so may adversely affect the performance of the vehicle's airbag system.

### *Deactivating/activating the Belt-Minder® feature*

**The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® are deactivated/activated independently. When deactivating/activating one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.**

*Read Steps 1 - 5 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation/activation programming procedure.*

**Note**: The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® features must be disabled/enabled separately. Both cannot be disable/enabled during the same key cycle.

**Note:** If you are using MyKey™, the Belt-Minder® cannot be disabled. Also, if the Belt-Minder® has been previously disabled, it will be re-enabled during the use of MyKey™. Refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and security* chapter.

The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® features can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set
- The gearshift is in P (Park)
- The ignition switch is in the off position
- The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** While the design allows you to deactivate your Belt-Minder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the Belt-Minder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt-Minder® feature while driving the vehicle.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the on position. DO NOT START THE ENGINE.

2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (Approximately one minute).

3. Wait 10 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.

- Step 4 must be completed within 20 seconds after the completion of Step 3.

4. For the seating position being disabled buckle then unbuckle the safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state.

- After Step 4, the safety belt warning light will be turned on for three seconds.

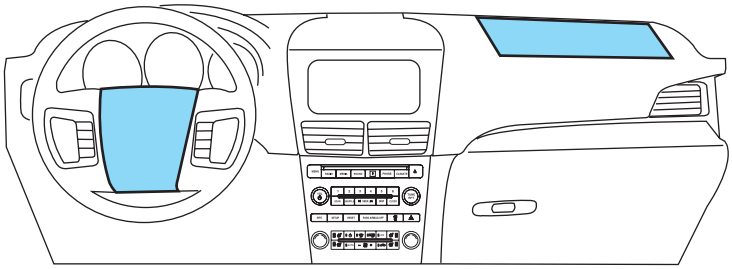
5. Within approximately seven seconds of the light turning off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.

- This will disable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently enabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds.
- This will enable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently disabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds, followed by three seconds with the light off, then followed by the safety belt warning light flashing four times per second for three seconds again.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

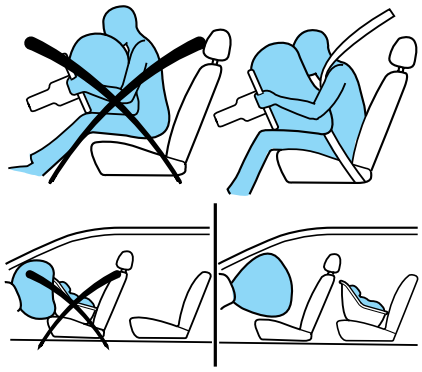
## AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



The airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is designed to work in conjunction with the safety belts to help protect the driver and front outboard passenger from certain upper body injuries. The term "supplemental restraint" means the airbags are intended as a supplement to the safety belts. Airbags offer the most protection when used with safety belts for crash conditions for which airbags are designed to deploy. Airbags do not offer any protection in crashes for which they do not deploy.

### Important SRS precautions

The SRS is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Do not place any object between an occupant and an airbag or near any other airbag covering. The airbag may not inflate properly and might force an object into that person causing severe injury or death. The instrument panel grab handle should never be used for storage. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear at all times.

**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

**WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

**WARNING:** The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

**WARNING:** Never place your arm over the air bag module as a deploying air bag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

**WARNING:** Do not put anything on or over the air bag module. Placing objects on or over the air bag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the air bag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. See your authorized dealer.

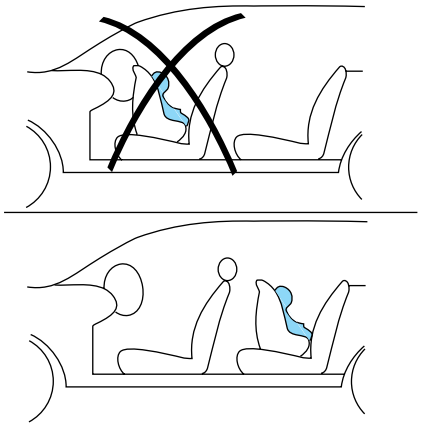


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

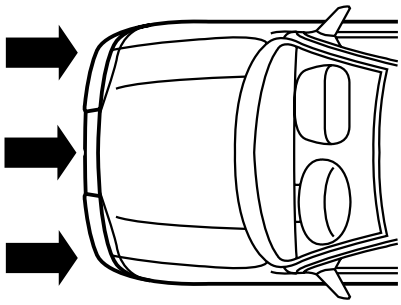
### Children and airbags

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.



**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

### How does the airbag supplemental restraint system work?



The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains longitudinal deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation. The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Front airbags are designed to inflate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

**WARNING:** Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

**WARNING:** If the air bag has deployed, **the air bag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the air bag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The SRS consists of:

- driver and passenger airbag modules (which include the inflators and airbags).
- side airbags and Safety Canopy®. Refer to *Seat-mounted side airbag system* and *Safety Canopy® system* later in this chapter.
- one or more impact and safing sensors.
- driver and front passenger safety belt pretensioner
- a readiness light and tone.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- diagnostic module.
- the electrical wiring which connects the components.
- Front passenger sensing system. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* later in this chapter.
- "Passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* later in this chapter.

The diagnostic module monitors its own internal circuits and the supplemental airbag electrical system wiring (including the impact sensors), the system wiring, the airbag system readiness light, the airbag back up power and the airbag ignitors.

### Front passenger sensing system

The front passenger sensing system is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag under certain conditions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or disabled (will not inflate).

The front passenger sensing system will disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag if:

- the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or has small/medium objects in the front seat,
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat,
- a front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time,
- a child or a small person occupies the front passenger seat.

When the passenger airbag off light is illuminated, the passenger side airbag may be disabled to avoid the risk of airbag deployment injuries.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The front passenger sensing system uses a "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator which will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled. The indicator lamp is located in the center of the instrument panel above the radio.

PASS AIRBAG OFF

**Note:** The indicator lamp will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is turned to the on position to confirm it is functional.

When the front passenger seat is not occupied (empty seat) or in the event that the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate), the indicator lamp will be unlit.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the indicator lamp will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the indicator lamp is not lit, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the indicator will be unlit and stay unlit.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Occupant | Pass Airbag Off Indicator Light | Passenger Airbag |
|---|---|---|
| Empty seat | Unlit | Disabled |
| Small child in child safety seat or booster | Lit | Disabled |
| Small child with safety belt buckled or unbuckled | Lit | Disabled |
| Adult | Unlit | Enabled |

**WARNING:** Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

**WARNING:** Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.
Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

The front passenger sensing system may detect small or medium objects placed on the seat cushion. For most objects that are in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag will be disabled. Even though the passenger airbag is disabled, the ″pass airbag off″ lamp may or may not be illuminated according to the table below.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Objects | Pass Airbag Off Indicator Light | Passenger Airbag |
|---|---|---|
| Small (i.e. three-ring binder, small purse, bottled water) | Unlit | Disabled |
| Medium (i.e. heavy briefcase, fully packed luggage) | Lit | Disabled |
| Empty seat, or small to medium object with safety belt buckled | Lit | Disabled |

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console (if equipped)
- Objects hanging off the seat back
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket (if equipped)
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of possible serious injury:
Do not stow objects in seat back map pocket (if equipped) or hang objects off seat back if a child is in the front passenger seat.
Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped).
Check the "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp for proper airbag Status.
Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In case there is a problem with the front passenger sensing system, the airbag readiness lamp in the instrument cluster will stay lit.



**If the airbag readiness lamp is lit, do the following:**

The driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged and/or cargo is interfering with the seat; please take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness lamp is no longer illuminated
- If the airbag readiness lamp remains illuminated, this may or may/not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

DO NOT attempt to repair or service the system; take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at the phone number shown in the *Customer Assistance* chapter of this Owner's Guide.

**WARNING:** Any alteration/modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.

### *Determining if the system is operational*

The supplemental restraint system uses a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or a back-up tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Warning lights and chimes* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light (same light for front and side airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.



- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### Seat-mounted side airbag system

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover on the side of the seatbacks of the front seats or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

**WARNING:** Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag SRS, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS is provided.

#### *How does the side airbag system work?*

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of

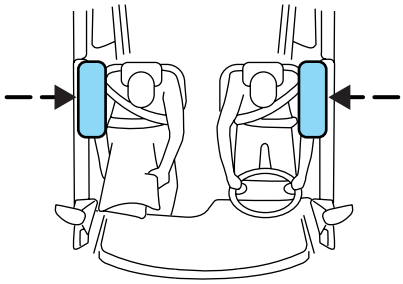




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

The side airbag system consists of the following:



- An inflatable nylon bag (airbag) with a gas generator concealed behind the outboard bolster of the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- A special seat cover designed to allow airbag deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Two crash sensors mounted in the front doors (one on each side of the vehicle).
- Crash sensors located on the C pillars (one sensor on each pillar on each side of the vehicle).

Side airbags, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision.

The side airbags are fitted on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain lateral collisions, the airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation.

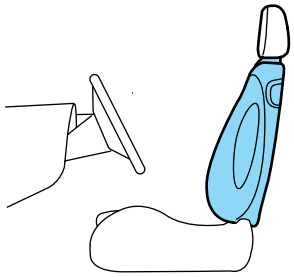
The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Side airbags are designed to inflate in side-impact collisions, not roll-over, rear-impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.

**WARNING:** Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



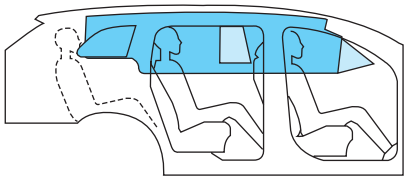
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** If the side airbag has deployed, **the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.



### Safety Canopy® System

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying Safety Canopy®. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The Safety Canopy® could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the Safety Canopy® system, its fuses, the A, B, C or D pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing a Safety Canopy®. See your authorized dealer.

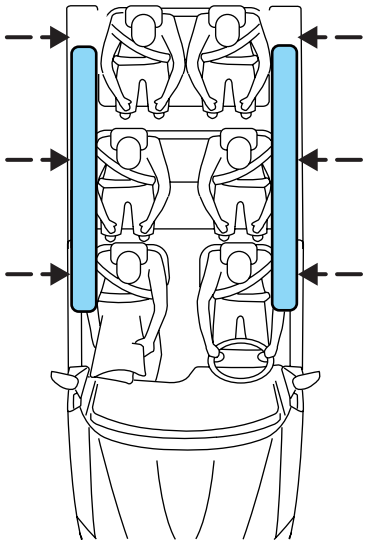


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS and Safety Canopy® system is provided.

**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the inflatable Safety Canopy®.

### *How does the Safety Canopy® system work?*



The design and development of the Safety Canopy® system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy®).

The Safety Canopy® system consists of the following:

- An inflatable nylon curtain with a gas generator concealed behind the headliner and above the doors (one on each side of vehicle).
- A headliner designed to flex open above the side doors to allow Safety Canopy® deployment.
- The same readiness airbag light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Two crash sensors mounted in the front doors (one on each side of the vehicle).
- Two crash sensors located at the C pillar behind the rear doors (one on each side of the vehicle).
- Rollover sensor in the restraints control module (RCM).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The Safety Canopy® system, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision or rollover event.

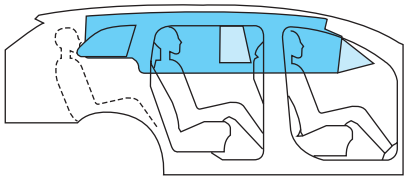
Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the second or third row seats. The Safety Canopy® will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The Safety Canopy® system is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the side crash sensor to close an electrical circuit that initiates Safety Canopy® inflation or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor.

The Safety Canopy® is mounted to roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above the first and second row seats and part of the third row seats. In certain lateral collisions or rollover events, the Safety Canopy® system will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy® is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact collisions and rollover events.

The fact that the Safety Canopy® did not activate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. The Safety Canopy® is designed to inflate in certain side impact collisions or rollover events, not in rear impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration or rollover.

**WARNING:** If the Safety Canopy® system has deployed, the Safety Canopy® will not function again unless replaced. The Safety Canopy® system (including the A, B, C, and D pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the Safety Canopy® is not replaced, it will not function again, which will increase the risk of injury in a future collision.







Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Determining if the system is operational*

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Airbag readiness* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

Any difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness airbag light (same light as for front airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at your an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision or rollover event.

## SOS Post-Crash Alert System™

The system automatically flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn three times at four second intervals in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy®) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The system can be turned off when any one of the following actions are taken by the driver or any other person:

- pressing the hazard control button,
- or pressing the panic button on the remote entry transmitter.

The feature will continue to operate until the vehicle runs out of power.

## Disposal of airbags and airbag equipped vehicles (including pretensioners)

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using airbags.

### Important child restraint precautions

**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The Recommendations for Safety Restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from NHTSA and other safety organizations or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and consult your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at http://www.sfa.ca, or Transport Canada at 1–800–333–0371 (http://www.tc.gc.ca). Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children | | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Child size, height, weight, or age** | **Recommended restraint type** |
| Infants or toddlers | Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger) | Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat). |
| Small children | Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer) | Use a belt-positioning booster seat. |
| Larger children | Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer) | Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright. |

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 ft 9 in (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

***Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children***

| Restraint Type | Child Weight | Use any attachment method as indicated below by "X" | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | **LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)** | **LATCH (lower anchors only)** | **Safety belt and top tether anchor** | **Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)** | **Safety belt only** |
| Rear facing child seat | Up to 48 lb (21 kg) | | **X** | | | **X** |
| Forward facing child seat | Up to 48 lb (21 kg) | **X** | | **X** | **X** | |
| Forward facing child seat | Over 48 lb (21 kg) | | | **X** | **X** | |

**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.

**WARNING:** Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

**WARNING:** Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

**WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

### Transporting children

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their age, height and weight. All children are shaped differently. The child height, age and weight thresholds provided are recommendations or the minimum requirements of law. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) provides education and





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

training to ensure that all children ages 0 to 16 are properly restrained in the correct restraint system. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your seat is appropriate for your child and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at **1-888-327-4236** or on the internet at http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST or for further information, contact your provincial ministry of transportation, your local St. John Ambulance office at http://www.sfa.ca, or Transport Canada at 1–800–333–0371 (http://www.tc.gc.ca).

Follow all the safety restraint and airbag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

If the child is the proper height, age, and weight (as specified by your child safety seat or booster manufacturer), fits the restraint and can be restrained properly, then restrain the child in the child safety seat or with the belt-positioning booster. Remember that child seats and belt-positioning boosters vary and may be designed to fit children of different heights, ages and weights. Children who are too large for child safety seats or belt-positioning boosters (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always properly wear safety belts.

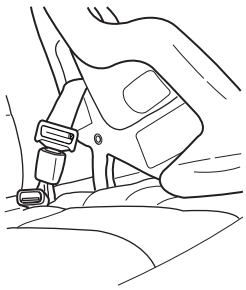
## SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

### Infant and/or toddler seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child.

When installing a child safety seat:

- Review and follow the information presented in the *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* section in this chapter.
- Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back.

Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

### Installing child safety seats with combination lap and shoulder belts

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to help prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place vehicle seat back in upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. Refer to step 5 below. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

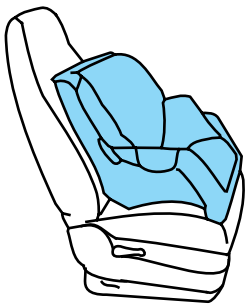
Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

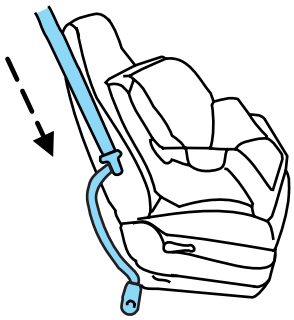


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

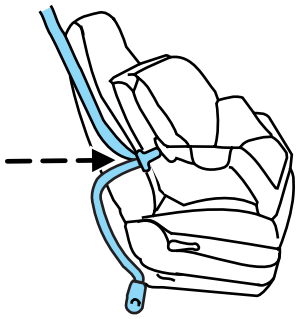
1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.

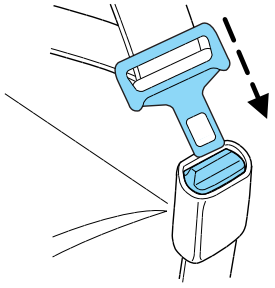




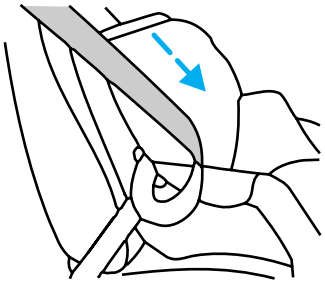


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.

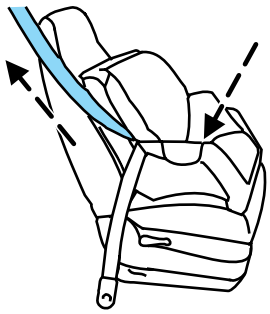


5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.



6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



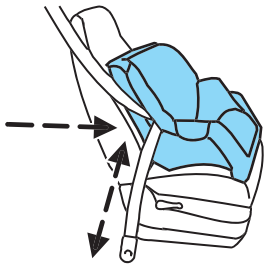




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.



Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a CPST.

### Attaching child safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) attachments

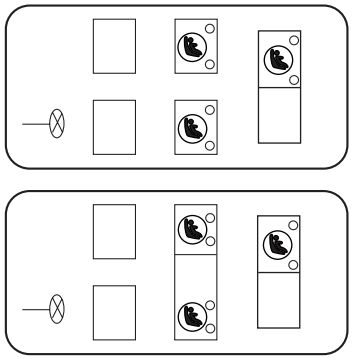
The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two (2) lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the “seat bight”) and one (1) top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat.See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* and *Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children* in this chapter for more information.

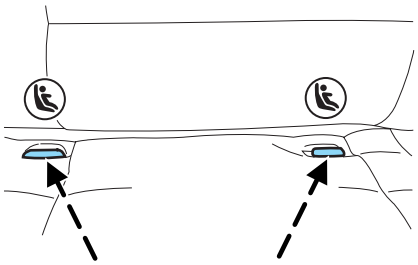


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.



The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seat back, below the locator symbols on the seatback. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments.



Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps. Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

**WARNING:** Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and/or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

### *Use of inboard lower anchors from the outboard seating positions (center seating use)*

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 520 mm (20.5 inches) apart. The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 280 mm (11 inches) center to center. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

**WARNING:** The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 280 mm (11 inches) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to the vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

### *Combining safety belt and LATCH lower anchors for attaching child safety seats*

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat. Refer to *Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children* in this chapter.

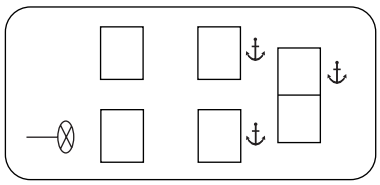
### Attaching child safety seats with tether straps

Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

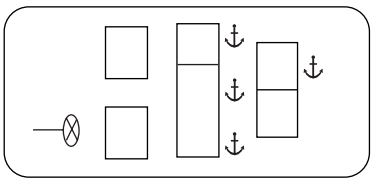
The rear seats of your vehicle are equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

- 40/40 second row seats and third-row passenger side



- 60/40 second row seats and third-row passenger side



Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

Once the child safety seat has been installed, using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

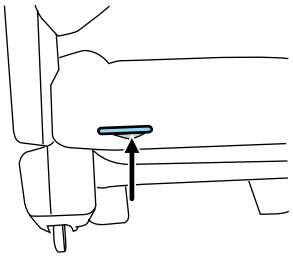
Perform the following steps to attach a child safety seat to the tether anchor:

1. Route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts.

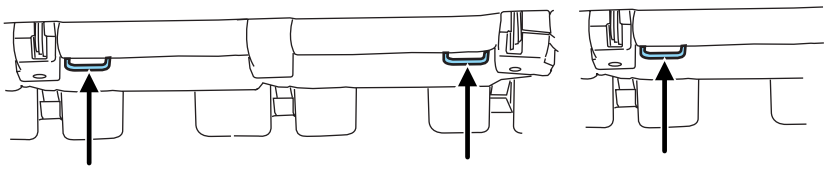
For vehicles with adjustable head restraints, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected rear seating position.

- 2nd row bucket (40/40)

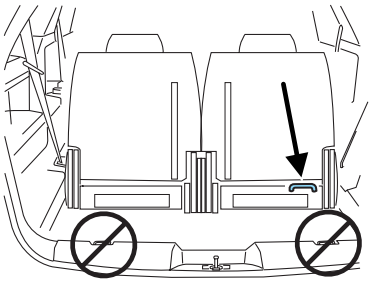


- 2nd row bench (60/40)



- 3rd row

  **Note**: The cargo tie-downs at the rear edge of the floor are not tether anchors.

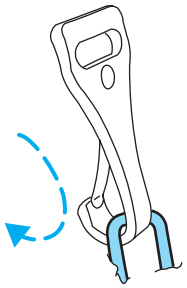






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.



If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

### Child booster seats

The belt-positioning booster (booster seat) is used to improve the fit of the vehicle safety belt. Children outgrow a typical child seat (e.g., convertible or toddler seat) when they weigh about 40 lb (18 kg) and are around four (4) years of age. Consult your child safety seat owner guide for the weight, height, and age limits specific to your child safety seat. Keep your child in the child safety seat if it properly fits the child, remains appropriate for their weight, height and age AND if properly secured to the vehicle.

Although the lap/shoulder belt will provide some protection, children who have outgrown a typical child seat are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, and wearing an improperly fitted vehicle safety belt could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash. To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

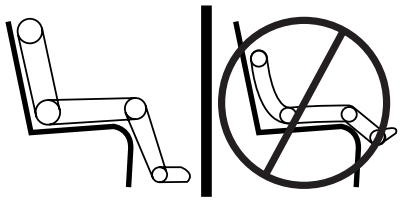
Booster seats position a child so that vehicle lap/shoulder safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably at the edge of the cushion, while minimizing slouching. Booster seats may also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably. Try to keep the belt near the middle of the shoulder and across the center of the chest. Moving the child closer (a few centimeters or inches) to the center of the vehicle, but remaining in the same seating position, may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.

### *When children should use booster seats*

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they reach a height of at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall (around age eight to age twelve and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) or upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?



- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Types of booster seats*

There are generally two types of belt-positioning booster seats: backless and high back. Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap/shoulder belt.

- Backless booster seats



If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap/shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.

- High back booster seats

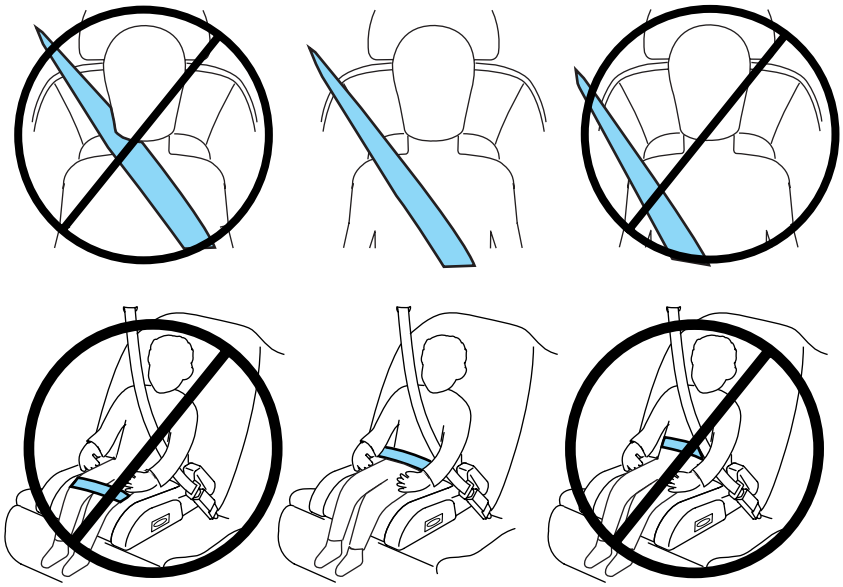


If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The drawings below compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings below also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

### *The importance of shoulder belts*

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is generally best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat.

Move a child to a different seating location if the shoulder belt does not stay positioned on the shoulder during use.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.

**WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

### Child restraint and safety belt maintenance

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

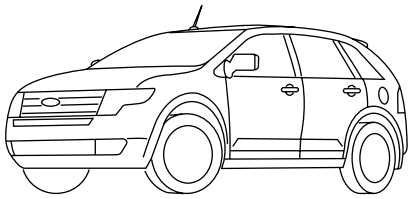
For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly or child restraint system under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## NOTICE TO CROSSOVER VEHICLE OWNERS



Crossover vehicles handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Crossover vehicles are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

**WARNING:** Crossover vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must:

- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers;
- Drive at safe speeds for the conditions;
- Keep tires properly inflated;
- Never overload or improperly load your vehicle; and
- Make sure every passenger is properly restrained.

**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

Study your Owner's Guide for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

## VEHICLE CHARACTERISTICS

### All Wheel Drive (AWD) System (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a full-time All Wheel Drive (AWD) system. With the AWD option, power will be delivered to the front wheels and distributed to the rear wheels as needed. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The AWD system is active all the time and requires no input from the operator.

**Note:** Your AWD vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle under other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

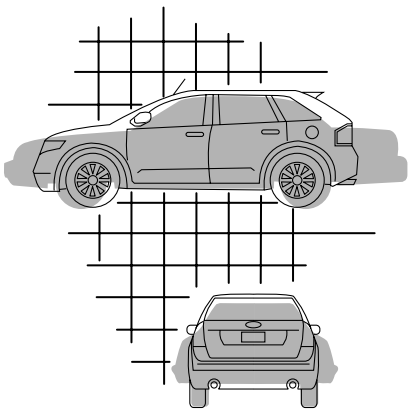
For AWD vehicles, a spare tire of a different size other that the tire provided should never be used. A dissimilar spare tire size (other than the spare tire provided) or major dissimilar tire sized between the front and rear axles could cause the AWD system to stop functioning and default to front wheel drive.

**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of AWD vehicles. Although a AWD vehicle may accelerate better than two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

### How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

Crossover vehicles can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:

- Higher – to allow higher load carrying capacity.
- Shorter – to give it the capability to approach inclines. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.
- Narrower — to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces.



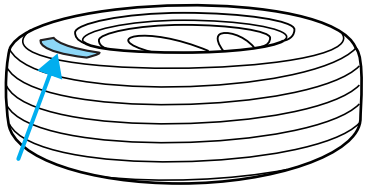
As a result of the above dimensional differences, crossover vehicles often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING



Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or "LT" type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction AA A B C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature A B C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

### Glossary of tire terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires].



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

### INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or ″blowout″, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never “bleed” or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note:** If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

**Note:** Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For Full Size and Dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

## TIRE CARE

### Inspecting your tires and wheel valve stems

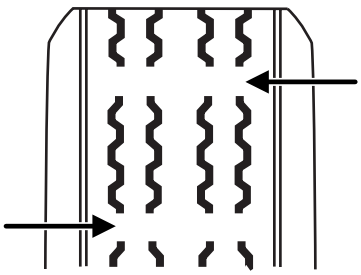
Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

### Tire wear



When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm). When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

### Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

**WARNING: Age**
Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.
You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Tire replacement requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver’s door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.
When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford Dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.
Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

### Safety practices

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., **do not** rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

### *Highway hazards*

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

### Tire and wheel alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front wheel drive (FWD) vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

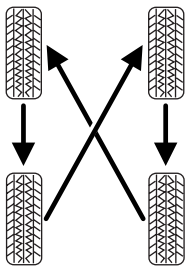
### Tire rotation

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *scheduled maintenance information* that comes with your vehicle) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

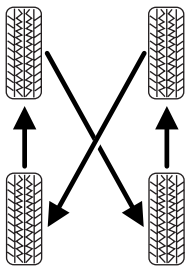


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Front Wheel Drive (FWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



- Rear Wheel Drive (RWD) vehicles/Four Wheel Drive (4WD)/All Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

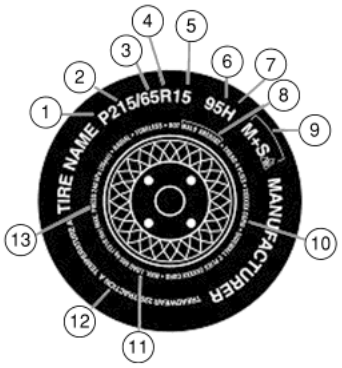
### INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Information on “P” type tires




P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

1. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

**Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

2. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width.

4. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6. **95:** Indicates the tire’s load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your Owner’s Guide. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

7. **H:** Indicates the tire’s speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

| Letter rating | Speed rating - mph (km/h) |
|---|---|
| M | 81 mph (130 km/h) |
| N | 87 mph (140 km/h) |
| Q | 99 mph (159 km/h) |
| R | 106 mph (171 km/h) |
| S | 112 mph (180 km/h) |
| T | 118 mph (190 km/h) |
| U | 124 mph (200 km/h) |
| H | 130 mph (210 km/h) |
| V | 149 mph (240 km/h) |
| W | 168 mph (270 km/h) |
| Y | 186 mph (299 km/h) |
| **Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR. | |

8. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

9. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or
**AT:** All Terrain, or
**AS:** All Season.

10. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

11. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

12. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades**

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

13. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Additional information contained on the tire sidewall for “LT” type tires

“LT” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below.




**Note:** Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

1. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

2. **Load Range/Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire’s load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

3. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

4. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.



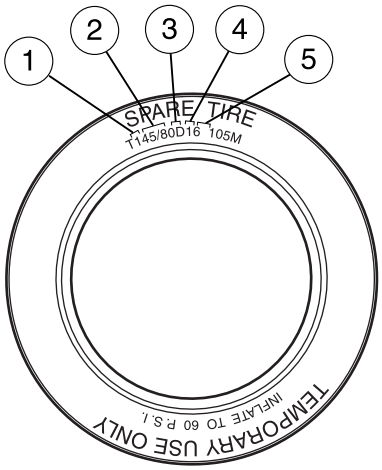
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Information on “T” type tires

“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.




1. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

2. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

4. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.
**R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

### Location of the tire label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Vehicle loading — with and without a trailer* section.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

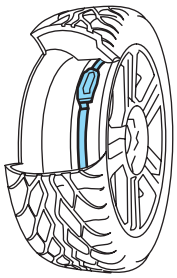


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**WARNING:** The Tire Pressure Monitoring System is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

**Changing tires with TPMS**



**Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor fastened to the inside rim of the wheel. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. The pressure sensor is located opposite (180 degrees) from the valve stem. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.** It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Understanding your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp will turn ON if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns ON and a short time later turns OFF, your tire pressure still needs to be checked. Visit www.checkmytires.org for additional information.

#### *When your temporary spare tire is installed*

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the TPMS system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full functionality of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with TPMS* in this section.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *When you believe your system is not operating properly*

The main function of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your Tire Pressure Monitoring System:

| Low Tire Pressure Warning Light | Possible cause | Customer Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| Solid Warning Light | Tire(s) under-inflated | 1. Check your tire pressure to ensure tires are properly inflated; refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.<br>2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light will turn OFF. |
| | Spare tire in use | Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to *When your temporary spare tire is installed* in this section. |
| | TPMS malfunction | If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the light remains ON, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Low Tire Pressure Warning Light | Possible cause | Customer Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| Flashing Warning Light | Spare tire in use | Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel and re-mount it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description of how the system functions under these conditions, refer to *When your temporary spare tire is installed* in this section. |
| | TPMS malfunction | If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the TPMS warning light still flashes, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. |

### *When inflating your tires*

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the Tire Pressure Monitoring System may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn OFF after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

### *How temperature affects your tire pressure*

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary over night with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is ON, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## SNOW TIRES AND CABLES/CHAINS

**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and cables. If you need to use cables, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as cables may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- Use only SAE class “S” snow chains, snow cables, or equivalent on the front axle for P235/55R19 equipped vehicles. The use of snow chains, snow cables, or other traction assist devices that are larger than SAE class ″S″ may cause damage to your vehicle’s wheel house, suspension and/or body.
- Do not install tire chains, cables, or optional traction devices on the rear tires. This could cause damage to the vehicle’s wheel house or body.
- Do not use tire chains, cables, or optional traction devices with optional 255/45R20 tires.
- Install cable chains securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and re-tighten the cables. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Remove the tire cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire cables on dry roads.
- The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) with tire cables on your vehicle.



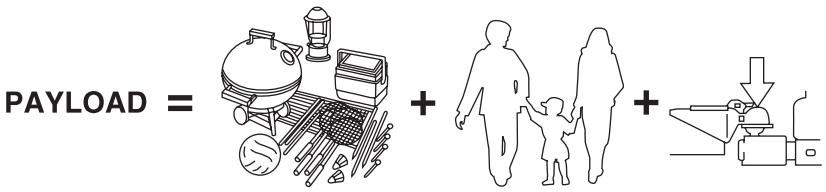
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## VEHICLE LOADING – WITH AND WITHOUT A TRAILER

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight** – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight** – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



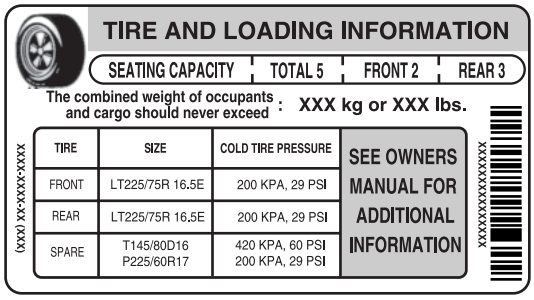

**Payload** – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **"THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb."** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

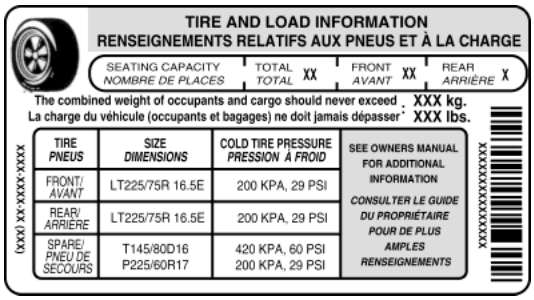


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

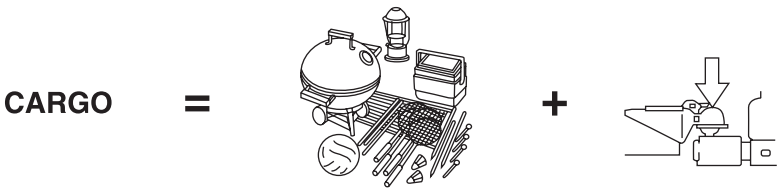
**Example only:**






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

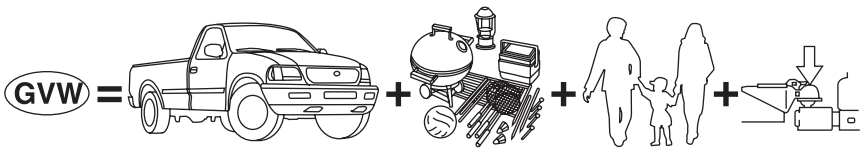



**Cargo Weight** – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load weight is also part of cargo weight.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to *Trailer towing* found in this chapter or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.




**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

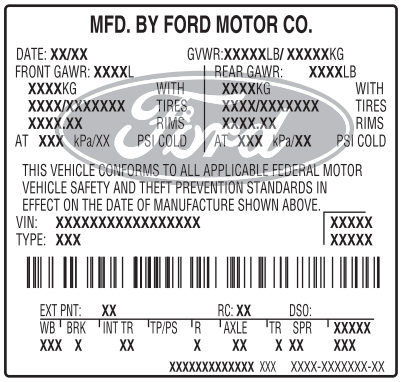
**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

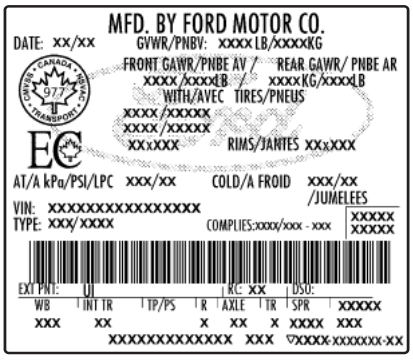




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- **Example only:**

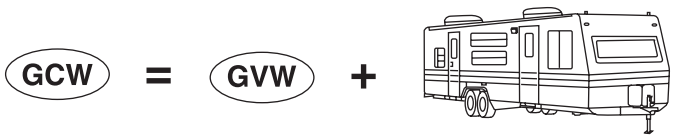

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.
DATE: XX/XX
GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG
FRONT GAWR: XXXXL
REAR GAWR: XXXXLB
XXXXKG WITH TIRES RIMS
XXXX/XXXXXXX WITH TIRES RIMS
XXXX.XX WITH TIRES RIMS
AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD
AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
TYPE: XXX
XXXXX
XXXXX
EXT PNT: XX
RC: XX
DSO:
WB BRK INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXXX
XXX X XX X XX X XX XXX
XXXXXXXXXXXX XXX XXXX-XXXXXXX-XX




**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




**GCW (Gross Combined Weight)** – is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

**GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer – including all cargo and passengers – that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicles' braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR. Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle. **The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

**Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight** – is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your authorized dealer (or the** *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* **provided by your authorized dealer) for more detailed information.**

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.

**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Steps for determining the correct load limit:**

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400–750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.). In metric units (635–340 (5 x 68) = 295 kg.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be: 1,400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1,400 - 1,100 - 150 = 150 lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (5 x 99 kg) - (5 x 13.5 kg) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kg.
- A final example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be: 1,400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1,400 - 440 - 1,200 = - 240 lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

calculation would be: 635 kg - (2 x 99 kg) - (12 x 45 kg) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

1,400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1,400 - 440 - 900 = 60 lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (2 x 99 kg) - (9 x 45 kg) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label found on the edge of the driver's door.

### TRAILER TOWING

Trailer towing puts additional loads on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires, and suspension. For your safety and to maximize vehicle performance, be sure to use the proper equipment while towing.

Follow these guidelines to ensure safe towing procedure:

- Stay within your vehicle's load limits.
- Thoroughly prepare your vehicle for towing. Refer to *Preparing to tow* in this chapter.
- Use extra caution when driving while trailer towing. Refer to *Driving while you tow* in this chapter.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. Refer to the severe duty schedule in the scheduled maintenance guide.
- Do not tow a trailer until your vehicle has been driven at least 1,000 miles (1,600 km).
- Refer to the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.
- The trailer tongue weight should be 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight.

Do not exceed the maximum loads listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label. For load specification terms found on the label, refer to *Vehicle loading – with and without a trailer* in this chapter. Remember to figure in the tongue load of your loaded vehicle when figuring the total weight.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| FWD | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)/Trailer Weight** | | | |
| **Class** | **Maximum GCWR** | **Trailer weight** | **Tongue load** |
| Class I towing (standard) | 6900 lb (3131 kg) | 2000 lb (907 kg)* | 200 lb (91 kg) |
| Class III towing (optional) | 9450 lb (4288 kg) | 4500 lb (2042 kg)* | 450 lb (204 kg) |
| *For towing trailers up to 3500 lb (1588 kg), use a weight carrying hitch and ball which uniformly spreads the trailer tongue loads through the vehicle's underbody structure. For towing trailers over 3500 lb (1588 kg), up to 4500 lb (2042 kg), it is recommended to use a weight distributing hitch to increase front axle load while towing. | | | |

| AWD | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)/Trailer Weight** | | | |
| **Class** | **Maximum GCWR** | **Trailer weight range** | **Tongue load** |
| Class I towing (standard) | 7070 lb (3208 kg) | 2000 lb (907 kg)* | 200 lb (91 kg) |
| Class III towing (optional) | 9620 lb (4365 kg) | 4500 lb (2042 kg)* | 450 lb (204 kg) |
| *For towing trailers up to 4500 lb (2042 kg), use a weight carrying hitch and ball which uniformly spreads the trailer tongue loads through the vehicle's underbody structure. | | | |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| EcoBoost AWD | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)/Trailer Weight** | | | |
| **Class** | **Maximum GCWR** | **Trailer weight range** | **Tongue load** |
| Class I towing (standard) | 7200 lb (3267 kg) | 2000 lb (907 kg)* | 200 lb (91 kg) |
| Class III towing (optional) | 9750 lb (4424 kg) | 4500 lb (2042 kg)* | 450 lb (204 kg) |
| *For towing trailers up to 4500 lb (2042 kg), use a weight carrying hitch and ball which uniformly spreads the trailer tongue loads through the vehicle's underbody structure. | | | |

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

### Preparing to tow

Use the proper equipment for towing a trailer and make sure it is properly attached to your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer or a reliable trailer dealer as soon as possible if you require assistance.

### Hitches

Do not use hitches that clamp onto the vehicle bumper. Use a load carrying hitch. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that 10–15% of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue.

#### *Weight distributing hitch*

When hooking up a trailer using a load equalizing hitch, always use the following procedure:

1. Park the unloaded vehicle on a level surface. With the ignition on and all doors closed, allow the vehicle to stand for several minutes so that it can level.

2. Measure the height of a reference point on the front and rear bumpers at the center of the vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Attach the trailer to the vehicle and adjust the hitch equalizers so that the front bumper height is within ½" (13 mm) of the reference point. After proper adjustment, the rear bumper should be no higher than in Step 2.

**WARNING:** Do not adjust a weight distributing hitch to any position where the rear bumper of the vehicle is higher than it was before attaching the trailer. Doing so will defeat the function of the weight distributing hitch, which may cause unpredictable handling, and could result in serious personal injury.

### Safety chains

Always connect the trailer's safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow slack for turning corners.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions that the rental agency gives to you.

**Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.**

### Trailer brakes

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.

**WARNING:** Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

### Trailer lamps

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. Do not connect trailer lamps directly to your vehicle's tail lamps. This can cause damage to your vehicle's electrical system. Contact your authorized dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking up trailer lamps.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Driving while you tow

When towing a trailer:

- Turn off the speed control. The speed control may shut off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Consult your local motor vehicle speed regulations for towing a trailer.
- It is recommended to select the L (Low) gear position when additional engine braking is needed. In situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades (i.e., driving in mountainous areas), additional engine braking is needed to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent them from overheating.
- Anticipate stops and brake gradually.

#### *Servicing after towing*

If you tow a trailer for long distances, your vehicle will require more frequent service intervals. Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

### Trailer towing tips

- Practice turning, stopping and backing up before starting on a trip to get the feel of the vehicle trailer combination. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels will clear curbs and other obstacles.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached.
- If you are driving down a long or steep hill, shift into the lowest gear position. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- The trailer tongue weight should be 10–15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- After you have traveled 50 miles (80 km), thoroughly check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts.
- To aid in engine/transmission cooling and A/C efficiency during hot weather while stopped in traffic, place the gearshift lever in P (Park).
- Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. If you must park on a grade, place wheel chocks under the trailer's wheels.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## RECREATIONAL TOWING

Follow these guidelines for your specific powertrain combination to tow your vehicle for personal travel (such as behind a motor home or a truck).

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. Refer to the *Climate Controls* chapter for more information.

In case of roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, please refer to *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

These guidelines are designed to prevent damage to your vehicle.

**Front Wheel Drive (FWD) vehicles:**

Tow your Front Wheel Drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground or with the front wheels off the ground by using a tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

**All Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles:**

Tow your All Wheel Drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground or with all four wheels off the ground using a vehicle transport trailer. **Do not tow your All Wheel Drive vehicle with the front wheels off the ground (by using a tow dolly) and the rear wheels on the ground.** This will cause damage to your AWD system. If you are using a vehicle transport trailer, follow the instruction specified by the equipment provider.

**Note:** If you tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, follow these instructions:

- Tow only in the forward direction.
- Release the parking brake.
- Place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Place the ignition in the accessory position (refer to *Starting* in the *Driving* chapter).
- Do not exceed 65 mph (105 km/h)
- Start the engine and allow it to run for five minutes at the beginning of each day and at each fuel stop.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## STARTING

### Ignition modes

1. Off — This position shuts the engine and all electrical accessories off. Press and release the START/STOP button without applying the brake pedal when your vehicle is in accessory or on modes or when the engine is running. **Note:** When the vehicle is in motion, a single press and release of the START/STOP button will not switch off the engine. In order to switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion, press and hold the START/STOP button for at least one second.

2. Accessory — This allows electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running. Press and release the START/STOP button without applying the brake pedal. ACCESSORY POWER ACTIVE and PRESS BRAKE TO START will be displayed in the message center. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

3. On — This will power your vehicle's electrical system and the warning lights in the instrument cluster will illuminate, but the engine will remain off. Press and hold the START/STOP button for at least one second without applying the brake pedal.

4. Start — Cranks the engine. Press the START/STOP button (for any length of time) while applying the brake pedal.

### Starting your vehicle

This system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

Don't press the accelerator before or during starting. Only use the accelerator when you have difficulty starting the engine. For more information on starting the vehicle, refer to *Starting the engine* in this chapter.

To avoid potential transmission damage at extremely cold temperatures (below -20°F [-30°C]), it is recommended that the vehicle be warmed up to normal operating temperature before driving at highway speeds above 50 mph (80 km/h). Normal operating temperature is normally reached after 10 minutes of moderate driving or idling.

**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

**WARNING:** Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. See *Guarding against exhaust fumes* in this chapter for more instructions.

**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### *Important safety precautions*

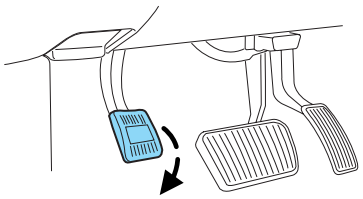
When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs higher than normal in order to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked.

Before starting the vehicle:

1. Make sure all vehicle occupants have buckled their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

2. Make sure vehicle accessories are off.

- Make sure the parking brake is set.

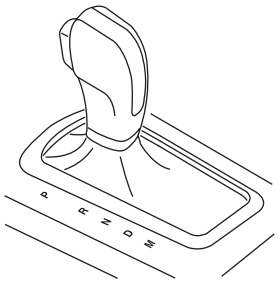






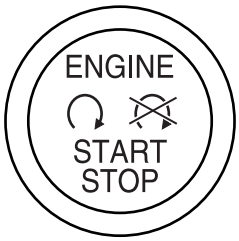
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Make sure the gearshift lever is in P (Park).




### Push button start system

Your vehicle is equipped with the push button start system, you can start your vehicle by pressing the start button in combination with the brake pedal. The start button is located on the instrument panel to right of the steering wheel.
**Note:** To start your vehicle, your Intelligent Access key (IA key) must be present inside the vehicle.




### Starting the engine

1. Press the START/STOP button (for any length of time) while applying the brake pedal. Your vehicle has a computer assisted cranking system that assists in starting the engine. After releasing the button from the 4 (start) position, the engine may continue cranking for up to 10 seconds or until the vehicle starts.
**Note:** You cannot immediately start your vehicle from the on mode, you must first switch the vehicle off. **Note:** The indicator light on the start button will illuminate when the vehicle is in on mode and when the engine is started.

2. After idling for a few seconds, release the parking brake, apply the brake, shift into gear and drive.

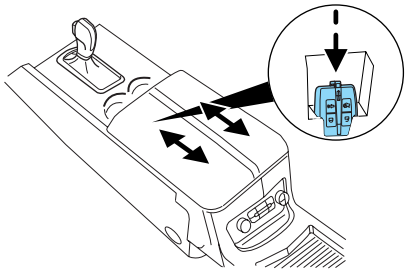
**Note:** If the engine does not start on the first try, turn the vehicle to the off position, wait 10 seconds and try Step 1 again. If the engine still fails to start, press the accelerator to the floor and try Step 1 again, keeping the accelerator on the floor until the engine begins to accelerate above cranking speeds; this will allow the engine to crank with the fuel shut off in case the engine is flooded with fuel.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

There may be areas inside your vehicle where the IA key is not detected. If the message NO KEY DETECTED appears on your message center when you press the START/STOP button, it may be necessary to move your IA key to another area within the vehicle. The IA key may not be detected near the roof (between the driver or passenger sunvisor and the roof, or in the overhead console area), or in the third row seat cup holder and armrest area, or in the extreme corners of the rear package tray, near your audio speakers. It is not recommended that you stow the IA key in these locations. If you move the IA key to a location where it has been detected before and you still see the NO KEY DETECTED message, your IA key's battery may be low or you may be in an area with excessive radio frequency interference. If this occurs, you can use the backup method to start your vehicle (see below).



**Backup Method of Starting:** Your IA key uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to start when you press the START/STOP button and apply the brake pedal. If excessive radio frequency interference is present in the area, or if the battery in your IA key is low, it may be necessary to start your car by inserting the IA key in the backup slot, located in the rear of the center console utility compartment. Insert the IA key into the slot with buttons facing out and with key ring up. After inserting the IA key into the backup slot, use the START/STOP button and brake pedal to start your vehicle as usual. The vehicle should respond normally as long as the IA key is in the backup slot in the center console utility compartment. Once the vehicle is started, the IA key can be removed from the backup slot, if desired.

**Fast Restart Feature:** The Fast Restart feature allows you to re-start your vehicle within 20 seconds of switching the vehicle off, if a valid IA key is not present when the vehicle is switched off. When you switch your vehicle off without a IA key in the passenger compartment, the message RESTART NOW OR KEY IS NEEDED will be displayed on the message center. You can re-start the vehicle (by applying the brake pedal and pressing the START/STOP button) for up to 20 seconds, even though the IA key is not present. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer start your vehicle without the IA key present inside the vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Switching the Vehicle Off when not in Park:** It is recommended that you shift into the Park position before switching your vehicle off. If you switch your vehicle off with the shifter in any position other than Park, the message SHIFT TO PARK will be displayed in the message center. If the vehicle is left in this state, your key in ignition chime will activate when the driver door is opened, and you may drain your vehicle's battery. In order to avoid draining your battery, it is recommended that you always shift to park before or immediately after switching your vehicle off.

**Absence of the Intelligent Access key:** Once the vehicle has started, the vehicle will remain running until being turned off by the START/STOP button, even if the IA key is no longer found in the vehicle. Whenever a door is opened and then closed while the vehicle is running, the system will search for a IA key inside the vehicle and the message center will display NO KEY DETECTED if the IA key is no longer present. This message is a reminder that someone else in the vehicle may have taken the IA key when exiting the vehicle. If the IA key is no longer present in the vehicle, you will not be able to re-start your vehicle outside of the Fast Restart time (see *Fast Restart Feature* above). It is important to be aware of where your IA key is located in the vehicle, to avoid becoming stranded without a IA key.

### Guarding against exhaust fumes

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### Important ventilating information

If the engine is idling while the vehicle is stopped for a long period of time, open the windows at least 1 inch (2.5 cm) or adjust the heating or air conditioning to bring in fresh air.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

An engine block heater warms the engine coolant which aids in starting and allows the heater/defroster system to respond quickly. If your vehicle is equipped with this system, your equipment includes a heater element which is installed in your engine block and a wire harness which allows the user to connect the system to a grounded 120 volt A/C electrical source. The block heater system is most effective when outdoor temperatures reach below 0°F (-18°C).

**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or physical injury.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters.

Prior to using the engine block heater, follow these recommendations for proper and safe operation:

- For your safety, use an outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). Use only an extension cord that can be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and is clearly marked "Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances." Never use an indoor extension cord outdoors; it could result in an electric shock or fire hazard.
- Use a 16 gauge outdoor extension cord, minimum.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords. Instead, use one extension cord which is long enough to reach from the engine block heater cord to the outlet without stretching.
- Make certain that the extension cord is in excellent condition (not patched or spliced). Store your extension cord indoors at temperatures above 32°F (0°C). Outdoor conditions can deteriorate extension cords over a period of time.
- To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two pronged (cheater) adapters. Also ensure that the block heater, especially the cord, is in good condition before use.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug /engine block heater cord plug connection is free and clear of water in order to prevent possible shock or fire.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Be sure that areas where the vehicle is parked are clean and clear of all combustibles such as petroleum products, dust, rags, paper and similar items.
- Be sure that the engine block heater, heater cord and extension cord are solidly connected. A poor connection can cause the cord to become very hot and may result in an electrical shock or fire. Be sure to check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately a half hour.
- Finally, have the engine block heater system checked during your fall tune-up to be sure it's in good working order.

**How to use the engine block heater**

Ensure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. To clean them, use a dry cloth.

Depending on the type of factory installed equipment, your engine block heater will use .4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. Your factory installed block heater system does not have a thermostat; however, maximum temperature is attained after approximately three hours of operation. Block heater operation longer than three hours will not improve system performance and will unnecessarily use additional electricity.

Make sure system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving the vehicle. While not in use, make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the engine block heater cord plug.

## BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

Refer to *Brake system warning light* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Your vehicle is equipped with an anti-lock braking system (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking and the brake pedal may suddenly travel a little farther as soon as ABS braking is done and normal brake operation resumes. These are normal characteristics of the ABS and should be no reason for concern.

### *Using ABS*

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal; do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance.

### *ABS warning lamp*



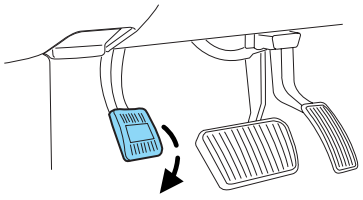

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS is disabled due to a malfunction and needs to be serviced.




Even when the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately.

## Parking brake Ⓟ

Apply the parking brake whenever the vehicle is parked. To set the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down until the pedal stops.







Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

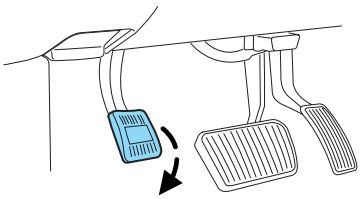
The BRAKE warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates and remains illuminated (when the ignition is turned on) until the parking brake is released.




**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).

The parking brake is not recommended to stop a moving vehicle. However, if the normal brakes fail, the parking brake can be used to stop your vehicle in an emergency. Since the parking brake applies only the rear brakes, the vehicle's stopping distance will increase greatly and the handling of your vehicle will be adversely affected.

Press the parking brake pedal downward again to release the parking brake. Driving with the parking brake on will cause the brakes to wear out quickly and reduce fuel economy.



**Note:** If the vehicle is driven with the parking brake applied, a chime will sound.

## ADVANCETRAC® WITH ROLL STABILITY CONTROL™ (RSC®) STABILITY ENHANCEMENT SYSTEM

**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and/or wheel/tire size may change the handling characteristics of the vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle, potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system activates, SLOW DOWN.

**WARNING:** If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system, the "sliding car" icon will illuminate steadily and you may hear a chime. If equipped with a message center, the vehicle will also indicate a failure with the Brake system, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately.
.

Your vehicle is equipped with the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system. The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system provides the following stability enhancement features for certain driving situations:

- Traction Control (TCS), which functions to help avoid drive-wheel spin and loss of traction.
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC), which functions to help avoid skids or lateral slides
- Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®), which functions to help avoid a vehicle roll-over.

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system automatically enables each time the engine is started. All features of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system (TCS, ESC, and RSC® are active and monitor the vehicle from start-up). However, the system will only intervene if the driving situation requires it.



The AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system includes an AdvanceTrac® with RSC® "Off" button on the center of the instrument panel, the "sliding car" icon and a "sliding car off" icon in the instrument cluster. Both the "sliding car" icon





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

and the “sliding car off” icon  in the instrument cluster will illuminate temporarily during start-up as part of a normal system self-check. The “sliding car” icon  may illuminate (flash) during certain driving situation which cause the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system to operate. If the “sliding car” icon  illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. The message center will also indicate a failure with the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system.

**Note:** If the system cannot be turned off, refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

When AdvanceTrac® with RSC® performs a normal system self-check, some drivers may notice a slight movement of the brake, and/or a rumble, grunting, or grinding noise after startup and when driving off.

When an event occurs that activates AdvanceTrac® with RSC® you may experience the following:

- A slight deceleration of the vehicle
- The “sliding car”  indicator light will flash.
- If your foot is on the brake pedal, a vibration in the pedal.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the systems applies higher brake forces. You may also hear a whoosh of air from under the instrument panel during this severe condition.
- The brake pedal may feel stiffer than usual.

**Traction Control (TCS)**

Traction Control is a driver aid feature that helps your vehicle maintain traction of the wheels, typically when driving on slippery and/or hilly road surfaces, by detecting and controlling wheel spin.

Excessive wheel spin is controlled in two ways, which may work separately or in tandem: Engine Traction Control and Brake Traction Control. Engine Traction Control works to limit drive-wheel spin by momentarily reducing engine power. Brake Traction Control works to limit wheel spin by momentarily applying the brakes to the wheel that is slipping. Traction Control is most active at low speeds.

During Traction Control events the “sliding car” icon  in the instrument cluster will flash.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Traction Control system is activated excessively in a short period of time, the braking portion of the system may become temporarily disabled to allow the brakes to cool down. In this situation, Traction Control will use only engine power reduction or transfer to help control the wheels from over-spinning. When the brakes have cooled down, the system will regain all features. Anti-lock braking, RSC®, and ESC will continue to function during the cool-down period.

The Engine Traction Control and Brake Traction Control system may be deactivated in certain situations. See the *Switching off Traction Control* section following.

**Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) may enhance your vehicle's directional stability during adverse maneuvers, for example when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. ESC operates by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power if the system detects that the vehicle is about to skid or slide laterally.

During Electronic Stability Control events the "sliding car" icon  in the instrument cluster will flash.

Certain adverse driving maneuvers may activate the Electronic Stability Control system, which include but are not limited to:

- Taking a turn too fast
- Maneuvering quickly to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle
- Driving over a patch of ice or other slippery surfaces
- Changing lanes on a snow-rutted road
- Entering a snow-free road from a snow-covered side street, or vice versa
- Entering a paved road from a gravel road, or vice versa
- Cornering while towing a heavily loaded trailer (refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter).

**Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®)**

Roll Stability Control (RSC®) may help to maintain roll stability of the vehicle during adverse maneuvers. RSC® operates by detecting the vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes and by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

During an event that activates the Roll Stability Control™ (RSC®) the "sliding car" icon  in the instrument cluster will flash.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Certain adverse driving maneuvers may activate the Roll Stability Control system, which include:

- Emergency lane-change
- Taking a turn too fast
- Quick maneuvering to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle

**Switching off Traction Control**

If the vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, and seems to lose engine power, switching off the Traction Control features of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system may be beneficial because the wheels are allowed to spin. This will restore full engine power and will enhance momentum through the obstacle.

To switch off the Traction Control press the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® "Off" button. Full features of the Traction Control can be restored by pressing the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® "Off" button again or by turning off and restarting the engine.



If you switch off the Traction Control, the "sliding car off" icon will illuminate steadily. Pressing the AdvanceTrac® with RSC® "Off" button again will turn off the "sliding car off" icon.




In R (Reverse), ABS and the Engine and Brake Traction Control features will continue to function; however, ESC and RSC® are disabled.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| AdvanceTrac® Features | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Control switch functions** | **Mode** | **"Sliding car off" icon** | **Message Center Display** | **ESC/ RSC** | **Traction Control** |
| Default at start-up | System Initialization | Turns on during bulb check | Nothing Displayed | Enabled | Enabled |
| Control switch pressed once momentarily | Traction Control OFF | On | TRACTION CONTROL OFF | Enabled | Disabled |
| Control switch pressed again after deactivation | AdvanceTrac® fully enabled | Off | ADVANCE-TRAC ON | Enabled | Enabled |

**Trailer sway control (if equipped)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with trailer sway control. When properly equipped, trailer sway control will use the vehicle's AdvanceTrac® with RSC® system to detect and mitigate trailer sway by applying brake force at individual wheels and, if necessary, by reducing engine power.

**Note:** Trailer sway control does not prevent a trailer from swaying, it mitigates the sway from increasing once it has occurred. TSC cannot stop all trailers from swaying. If you are experiencing trailer sway it is likely that the trailer is improperly loaded for the correct tongue weight or the speed of the vehicle and trailer is too high. Pull the vehicle-trailer over to a safe location to check the trailer weight distribution and tongue load and reduce speed to a safe level while towing. If trailer sway is experienced, SLOW DOWN. Always use caution when towing a trailer and follow the tongue weight recommendations. Refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information on towing a trailer with your vehicle.

During trailer sway control events the icon in the instrument cluster will flash momentarily. The cluster message center will also display **TRAILER SWAY REDUCE SPEED**. In some cases when trailer sway is detected, the vehicle speed is too high and may be at or above a speed at which trailer sway will grow continuously. This may cause the system to activate multiple times, causing a gradual reduction in speed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Disabling trailer sway control**
Trailer sway control can be disabled during any key cycle. To disable trailer sway control, refer to the *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Note that regardless of chosen enable state, trailer sway control will be re-enabled each new key cycle.

**WARNING:** Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury, or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (e.g., hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

## STEERING

**3.5L EcoBoost engine (if equipped):** Your vehicle is equipped with an Electric Power Steering (EPS) system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving (or if the ignition is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort it takes for you to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and permanent damage to your steering system. If this should occur, you will neither lose the ability to steer the vehicle manually nor will it cause permanent damage. Typical steering and driving maneuvers will allow the system to cool and steering assist will return to normal.

The EPS system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the EPS system to ensure proper operation. When a system error is detected, the following message SERVICE POWER STEERING, SERVICE POWER STEERING NOW or POWER STEERING ASSIST FAULT may display in the message center, refer to the *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

**WARNING:** The EPS system has diagnostics checks that continuously monitor the EPS system to ensure proper operation of the electronic system. When an electronic error is detected, the message POWER STEERING ASSIST FAULT will be displayed in the message center. If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place, and turn off the engine. After at least 10 seconds, reset the system by restarting the engine, and watch the message center for POWER STEERING ASSIST FAULT. If the message returns, or returns while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With the message displayed, the steering assist is turned off, making the vehicle harder to steer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** If the message SERVICE POWER STEERING is displayed in the message center, the EPS system has detected a problem with the system function. On the next key cycle the message SERVICE POWER STEERING NOW will be displayed and steering assist will be removed until the steering system is serviced. Have your vehicle taken to the nearest dealer as soon as possible.

**3.7L V6 Duratec engine:** Your vehicle is equipped with a hydraulic steering system.

To help prevent damage to the power steering system, never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than a few seconds when the engine is running. If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort.

- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (below the MIN mark on the reservoir).
- Some noise is normal during operation. If excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.
- Heavy or uneven steering efforts may be caused by low power steering pump fluid level. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.
- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX mark on the reservoir, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

If the steering wanders or pulls equipped with either EPS or hydraulic steering system, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper vehicle alignment

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## BRAKE-SHIFT INTERLOCK

This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the on position unless the brake pedal is applied. If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) when the ignition is on and the brake pedal applied, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

If the fuse is not blown and the brakelamps are working properly, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brakelamps are working.

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Switch the ignition to off, and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION OPERATION

### Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

Your transmission is equipped with an adaptive learning strategy found in the vehicle computer. This feature is designed to increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of the vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the strategy must be relearned.

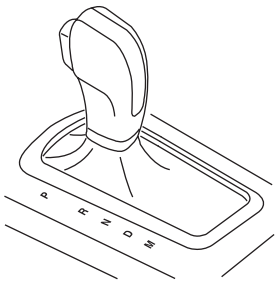


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Understanding the gearshift positions of the 6–speed automatic transmission

Your vehicle has been designed to improve fuel economy by reducing fuel usage while coasting or decelerating. When you take your foot off the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to slow down the torque converter clutch locks up and aggressively shuts off fuel flow to the engine while decelerating. This fuel economy benefit may be perceived as a light to medium braking sensation when removing your foot from the accelerator pedal.

**P (Park)**




This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Press the brake pedal
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

**R (Reverse)**

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

**N (Neutral)**

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

**D (Drive) with Overdrive**

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transmission operates in gears one through six.



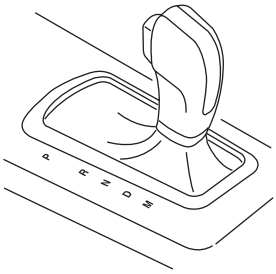


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**M (Manual) with Grade Assist**

Initially, moving the lever to M (Manual) activates grade assist and cancels overdrive.

Grade Assist:




- Provides additional grade (engine) braking and extends lower gear operation on uphill climbs for hilly terrain or mountainous areas.
- Provides additional engine braking through the automatic transmission shift strategy which reacts to vehicle inputs (vehicle acceleration, accelerator pedal, brake pedal and vehicle speed).
- Allows the transmission to select gears that will provide the desired engine braking based on the vehicle inputs mentioned above. This will increase engine RPM during engine braking.
- The grade assist indicator in the instrument cluster is illuminated.



Grade assist is designed to aid the driver with optimal gear selection in hilly terrain or mountainous areas but is not intended for normal operation. It is recommended that you return to O/D (overdrive mode) on flat terrain to provide the best fuel economy and transmission function.

To return to normal D (Drive) position (with O/D), move the shift lever back from M (Manual) to D (Drive).

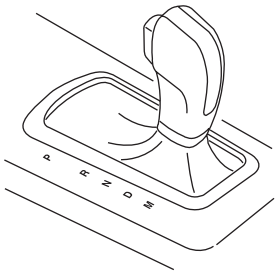
- The grade assist lamp in the instrument cluster will not be illuminated.
- The transmission will operate in gears one through six.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

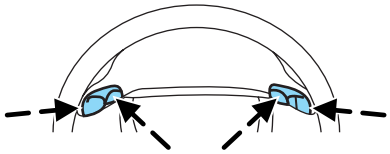
## Understanding your SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission (SST)



This vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic™ transmission (SST) gearshift lever. SST is an automatic transmission with the ability for the driver to change gears up or down (without a clutch) as desired. By moving the gearshift lever from drive position D (Drive) to M (Manual) you now have control of selecting the gear you desire using the paddle shifters on the steering wheel.

### Paddle shifters

The paddle shifters allow you to shift gears quickly, without taking your hands off the steering wheel.



1. To manually downshift the transmission with the gearshift lever in M (Manual), press the paddle shifters forward.
2. To manually upshift the transmission with the gearshift lever in M (Manual), pull the paddle shifters rearward.

### Recommended shift speeds

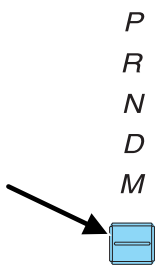
Upshift according to the following chart:

| Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy) | |
|---|---|
| Shift from: | |
| 1 - 2 | 15 mph (24 km/h) |
| 2 - 3 | 25 mph (40 km/h) |
| 3 - 4 | 40 mph (64 km/h) |
| 4 - 5 | 45 mph (72 km/h) |
| 5 - 6 | 50 mph (80 km/h) |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The instrument cluster will show the current selected gear you are in.




In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, the SST will automatically make some downshifts even if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although the SST will make some downshifts for you, it will still allow you to downshift at any time as long as the SST determines that the engine will not be damaged from over-revving.

**Engine damage may occur if excessive engine revving is held without shifting.**

### REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM

The Reverse Sensing System (RSS) sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when the R (Reverse) is selected and the vehicle is moving at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. Reverse sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at “parking speeds”. Inclement weather may also affect the function of the RSS; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in R (Reverse) and when using the RSS.

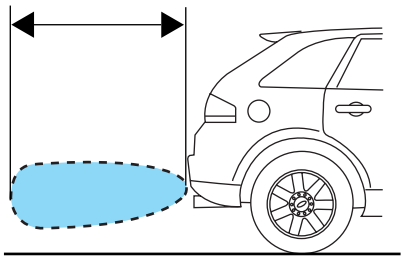
**WARNING:** This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

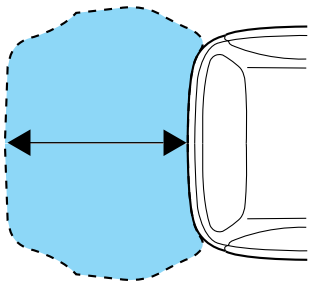


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the RSS system may create false beeps.

The RSS detects obstacles up to six feet (two meters) from the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper, (refer to the figures for approximate zone coverage areas). As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the obstacle is less than 10 inches (25.0 cm) away, the tone will sound continuously. If the RSS detects a stationary or receding object further than 10 inches (25.0 cm) from the side of the vehicle, the tone will sound for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the tone will sound again.





While receiving a warning the radio volume will be reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio will return to the previous value.

The RSS automatically turns on when the gearshift lever is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is on. A control in the message center allows the driver to disable the system, refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information.

**Note:** If the system cannot be turned off, refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**Keep the RSS sensors (located on the rear bumper/fascia) free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt (do not clean the sensors with sharp objects). If the sensors are covered, it will affect the accuracy of the RSS.**

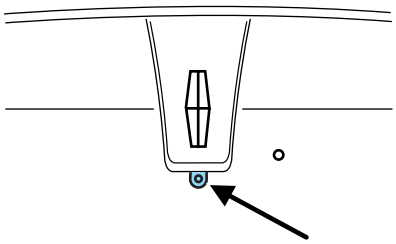
**If your vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

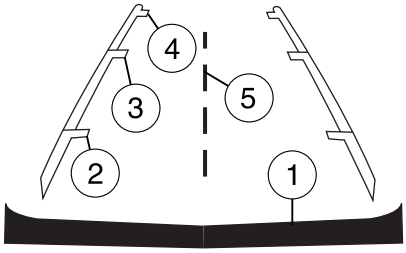
## REARVIEW CAMERA SYSTEM

The rearview camera system, located on the liftgate, provides a video image, which appears on the navigation system screen, of the area behind the vehicle. It adds assistance to the driver while reversing or reverse parking the vehicle.



To use the camera system, place the transmission in R (Reverse); an image will display on the navigation screen. The area displayed on the screen may vary according to the vehicle orientation and/or road condition.

- (1) Rear bumper
- (2) Red zone
- (3) Yellow zone
- (4) Green zone
- (5) Center line of vehicle




Always use caution while backing.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are further away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones.

Use the side mirrors and rearview mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle. When shifting out of reverse and into any other gear, the image will remain on for a few seconds before it shuts off to assist in parking or trailer hookup.

After shifting out of R (Reverse) and into any gear other than P (Park), the image will remain until the vehicle speed reaches 5 mph (8 km/h), only if the rear camera delay feature is on, or until any navigation radio button is pressed.

**Note:** The default setting for the rear camera delay is off. Press the "Settings" button found on the navigation screen to set the rear camera delay feature to on or off.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When towing, the camera system will only see what is being towed behind the vehicle; this might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen.

The camera lens for the camera is located on the liftgate. Keep the lens clean so the video image remains clear and undistorted. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.

**Note:** If the camera system image is not clear or seems distorted, it may be covered with water droplets, snow, mud or any other substance. If this occurs, clean the camera lens before using the camera system.

**WARNING:** The camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the rearview mirror and the side mirrors for maximum coverage.

**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

**WARNING:** Backup as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop the vehicle.

**WARNING:** Do not use the camera system with the liftgate open.

If the back end of the vehicle is hit or damaged, then check with your authorized dealer to have your rear video system checked for proper coverage and operation.

**Night time and dark area use**

At night time or in dark areas, the camera system relies on the reverse lamp lighting to produce an image. Therefore it is necessary that both reverse lamps are operating in order to get a clear image in the dark. If either of the lamps are not operating, stop using the camera system, at least in the dark, until the lamp(s) are replaced and functioning.

**Servicing**

- If the image comes on while the vehicle is not in R (Reverse), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.
- If the image is not clear, then check if there is anything covering the lens such as dirt, mud, ice, snow, etc. If the image is still not clear after cleaning, have your system inspected by your authorized dealer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## COLLISION WARNING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

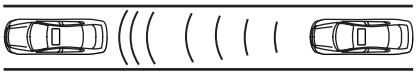
The collision warning with brake support, is designed to alert the driver of certain collision risks with a red warning light located above the dashboard and an audible warning chime. The brake support assists the driver in reducing the collision speed, by pre-charging the brakes.

**WARNING:** This system is designed to be a supplementary driving aid. It is not intended to replace the driver's attention, and judgement, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does NOT activate the brakes automatically. Failure to press the brake pedal to activate the brakes may result in a collision.

**WARNING:** The Collision Warning System with Brake Support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain distance and speed.

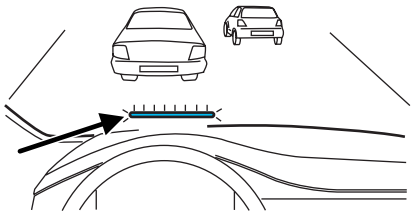
**Note:** The collision warning with brake support will not detect, warn, or respond to potential collisions with vehicles to the rear or sides of the vehicle.

### Operation



The radar sensor detects vehicles ahead that are moving in the same direction as your vehicle.

If the radar detects that your vehicle is rapidly closing on another vehicle a red warning light will illuminate and an audible warning chime will sound.



After that, if the risk of collision further increases after the warning light, the brake support prepares the brake system for rapid braking. This may be perceptible to the driver. However, the system will not automatically activate the brakes. The vehicle will not stop unless the driver presses the brake pedal. If the brake pedal is pressed then braking is implemented with full brake function, even if the force on the brake pedal is light.

The collision warning system is active at speeds above approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Collision Warning System Limitations

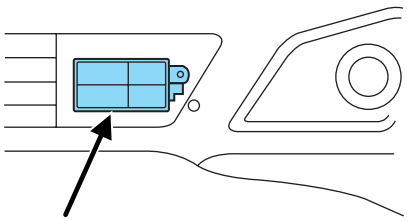
Due to the nature of radar technology, there may be certain instances where vehicles will not provide a collision warning. These include:

- Stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.
- Severe weather conditions (see also blocked sensor section).
- Debris build up on the grille near the headlamps (see block sensor section).
- Small distance to vehicle ahead.
- Steering wheel and pedal movements are large (very active driving style).
- High interior temperatures, which may deactivate the illumination or the warning lamps until the interior temperature reduces (audible warning will alert the driver).

In addition, sun load and sunglasses may reduce the visibility of the warning lamps. Therefore, it is recommended to keep the audible warning on.

**WARNING:** The collision warning system's brake support can only help reduce the speed at which a collision occurs if the driver applies the vehicle's brakes. The brake pedal must be pressed just like for any typical braking situation.

### Blocked sensor



If a message regarding a blocked sensor is displayed, the radar signals from the sensor, located behind a fascia cover near the driver side of the lower grille, have been obstructed. When the radar signals are obstructed, a vehicle ahead cannot be detected and the Collision Warning system will not function.
The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message being displayed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Cause | Action |
|---|---|
| The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way | Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction |
| The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display | Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is no longer obstructed |
| Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals | Do not use the Collision Warning System in these conditions because it may not detect, warn, or respond to potential collisions |
| Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals | Do not use the Collision Warning System in these conditions because it may not detect, warn, or respond to potential collisions |

**Activating/deactivating collision warning system**

To turn the warning system and/or chime on or off and set the warning sensitivity <– –>, refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

**Note:** If the system cannot be turned off in a MyKey™ equipped vehicle, refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

**Note:** If collision warnings are perceived as being too frequent or disturbing then the warning sensitivity can be reduced, though the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings. Refer to the *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for instructions on reducing the sensitivity.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (APA) (IF EQUIPPED)

Active Park Assist (APA) will detect an available parallel parking space and automatically steer the vehicle into the space (hands free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system will visually and/or audibly instruct the driver to park the vehicle.



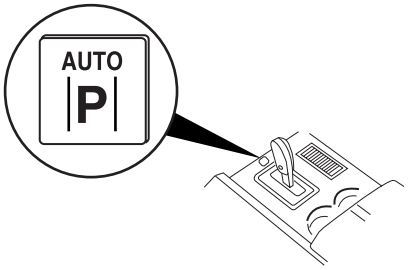
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** This system is designed to be a supplementary park aid. It may not work in all conditions and is not intended to replace the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is responsible for avoiding hazards and maintaining a safe distance and speed, even when the APA is in use.

Conditions in which the system may not work:

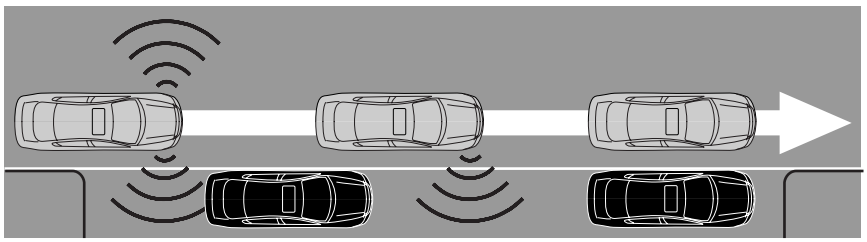
- Something passes between the front bumper and the space such as a pedestrian or cyclist
- The edge of the vehicle is high from the ground such as a bus, tow truck, or flat bed truck

**Automatic Search for Parking Space**




To start, press the APA control switch (on the center console). The message center will display ACTIVE PARK SEARCHING. To designate what side of the street to search on, use the turn signal. The arrow symbols >> and << in the message center indicate on which side of the vehicle APA will park. (If the turn signal is not on, the system will automatically search the passenger side.)

For best performance, the driver should drive the vehicle as parallel as possible while passing a parking space. If driven too fast (above 18 mph [30 km/h]) for the system to measure parking spaces, the message center will display ACTIVE PARK REDUCE SPEED.



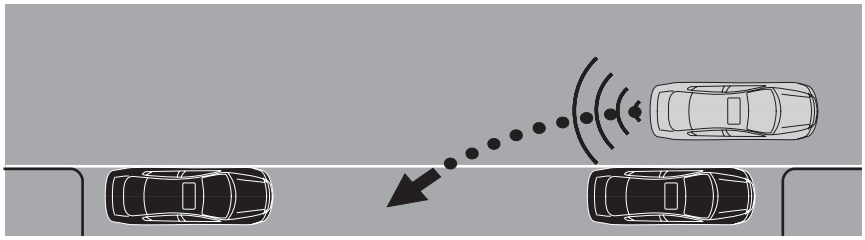


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

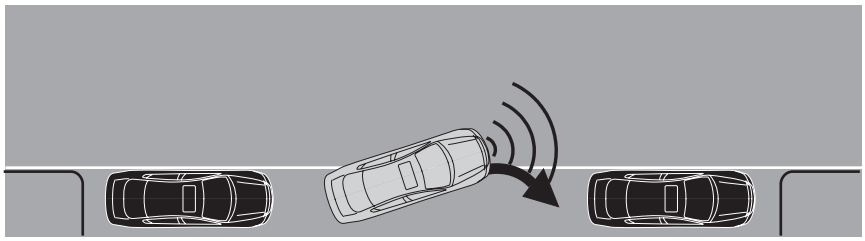
When the system has found a space, the message center will display SPACE FOUND PULL FORWARD followed by a chime. Drive forward until the message center displays SPACE FOUND STOP followed by a chime. When you stop the vehicle in position to begin parking, the message center displays REMOVE HANDS PUT IN REVERSE. The driver should always come to a complete stop before changing gears.

**Automatic Steering into Parking Space**

Automatic steering is activated when you stop the vehicle, remove your hands from the steering wheel and select the R (Reverse) gear. Be sure the steering wheel motion is not obstructed by any objects. The vehicle will steer itself from this point on as you follow the instructions in the message center to safely move the vehicle reverse and forward in the space. You may cancel APA at anytime by grabbing the steering wheel or by pressing the APA control switch. When the vehicle is in R (Reverse) the message center displays BACK UP USE CAUTION.



When you determine the vehicle is back far enough or you hear a solid tone from the Reverse Sensing System, bring the vehicle to a complete stop and move the gearshift to D (Drive). The message center will now display PULL FORWARD USE CAUTION followed by a chime.





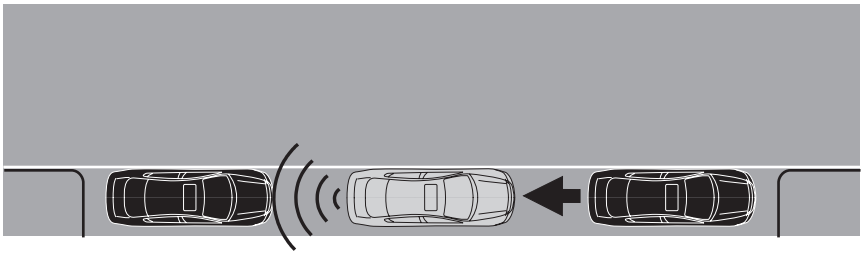


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When you determine the vehicle is far enough forward or a solid tone from the Forward Sensing System (if equipped) is heard, bring the vehicle to a complete stop and move the gearshift to R (Reverse). The message center may display BACK UP SLOWLY USE CAUTION followed by a chime. The system may offer subsequent backward and forward maneuvers before proceeding to the finish phase.

**APA Finished**

When Active Park Assist has completed the automated steering, the message center displays ACTIVE PARK FINISHED followed by a chime.



The driver is responsible to assess and correct as necessary the final parking position and put the vehicle in P (Park).

**The system can also be deactivated at any time by the following:**

- Pressing the APA control switch
- Grabbing the steering wheel
- Exceeding a vehicle speed of 18 mph (30 km/h) for 30 seconds during Active Park Searching
- Exceeding a vehicle speed of 6 mph (10 km/h) during automatic steering
- Deactivating the AdvanceTrac® system or the system has activated on a slippery or loose surface
- ABS activation or failure
- Any door (except the driver's door) opens
- Something touching the steering wheel

If a fault is present in the system, the message ACTIVE PARK FAULT will be displayed followed by a chime. Contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**The system should not be used if:**

- A foreign object (i.e. bike rack, trailer, etc.) is attached to the front or rear of the vehicle or at another location close to the sensors.
- The front bumper or side sensors are damaged (i.e. in a collision) or obstructed by a foreign object (i.e. front bumper cover).
- A mini-spare tire is used

**Troubleshooting**

**Why isn't APA searching for a parking space?**

- You may have deactivated the AdvanceTrac® system.
- One of the doors (except the driver's door) may not be securely closed.

**Why doesn't APA offer a particular parking space?**

- Something may be contacting the front bumper or side sensors. Clear any material stuck to the sensors.
- There may not be enough room to maneuver the vehicle into the space. Remember, there needs to be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle to allow the front of the vehicle to swing out as you back into the space.
- The vehicle is not driven close enough to the parking space, less than 60 inches [1.5 m] from neighboring parked vehicles.
- The vehicle is driven too close to the side objects (e.g. less than 16 inches [41 cm] from neighboring parked vehicles).
- You may be driving in R (Reverse). APA can only look for a parking space while moving forward.

**Why doesn't APA position the vehicle where I want in the space?**

- The driver allows the vehicle to roll in the opposite direction of the transmission (such as rolling forward when R (Reverse) gear is selected.
- You may be driving in R (Reverse). APA can only look for a parking space while moving forward.
- There may be an irregular curb along the parking space. APA might not be able to align the vehicle to curbs that are damaged, very shallow or covered with material such as debris, leaves, snow, or tarps.
- The vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned appropriately.
- The vehicle was steered more that usual while driving by the space. APA performs best when you drive the same distance from the parking space the entire length of the space.

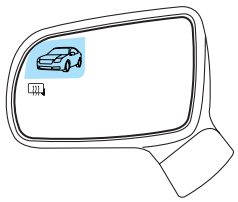




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- The tires may not be installed and maintained correctly. For example, one or more tires may not be inflated correctly, may not be of the same size, or may not be authorized for use on this vehicle.
- The vehicle had a repair or alteration that is not authorized by the manufacturer.
- One of the parked vehicles has a high altitude attachment (i.e. salt sprayer, snow plow, moving truck high bed, etc.) High altitude attachments may not be detected by the system.
- The parking space length or parked objects position have changed after the vehicle has passed the parking space.
- The temperature around your vehicle changed quickly such as you just drove from a heated garage into the cold or just left a car wash. As a result, the outside air temperature displayed in the vehicle may not be close enough to the actual temperature. APA relies on a correctly sensing the temperature outside for precisely positioning the vehicle.

### BLIND SPOT MIRRORS (IF EQUIPPED)



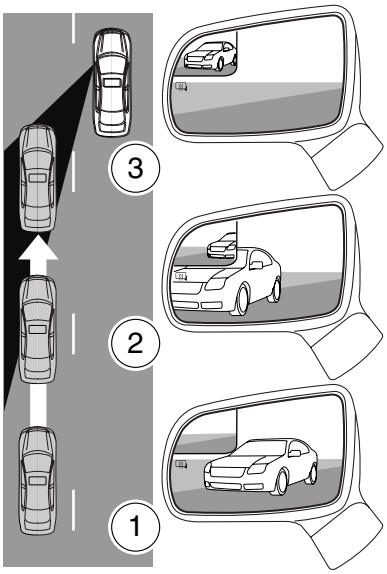
Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex spotter mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the outside mirrors. They are designed to assist the driver by increasing visibility along the side of the vehicle. For more information on your side view mirrors, refer to *Exterior mirrors* in the *Driver Controls* chapter.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Driving with blind spot mirrors




Before a lane change, check the main mirror first, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you are going to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear, and carefully change lanes.

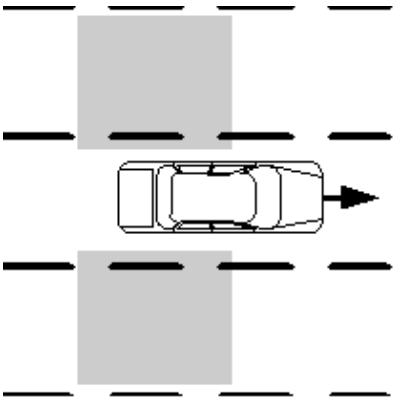
When the approaching vehicle is at a distance, its image is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror. As the vehicle approaches, the image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror (1). As the vehicle approaches its image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror (2). As the vehicle leaves the blind spot mirror it will transition to the driver's peripheral field of view (3).

**WARNING:** Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

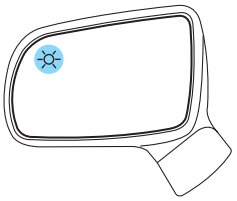
## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM (BLIS®) WITH CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT (CTA) (IF EQUIPPED)



The BLIS® is a convenience feature that aids the driver in assessing whether a vehicle is within an area on either side of the vehicle extending rearward from the outside mirrors to approximately 10 feet (three meters) beyond the bumper. This area is referred to as the blind zone. The BLIS® will alert the driver to the presence of motorized vehicles in these areas while driving on roads and freeways.

The system is not designed to prevent contact with other vehicles or objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting vehicles in the blind zones. The system will not detect infrastructure, pedestrians, or cyclists.

**WARNING:** To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the BLIS® as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. BLIS® is not a replacement for careful driving and only an assist.



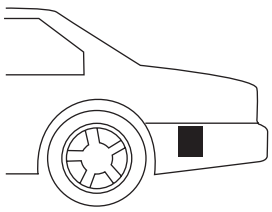
The BLIS® and CTA has an yellow indicator (also referred to as the alert) located in the left and right exterior mirrors. When the vehicle is started, the BLIS® automatically illuminates both indicators for several seconds indicating the system is operating. The first time you place the transmission in D (Drive) after starting the engine and drive forward at a speed greater than 3 mph (5 km/h) the BLIS® system becomes active. Afterwards, the BLIS® remains active for all speeds including zero mph. BLIS® is also active if the transmission is placed in N (Neutral). If the transmission is shifted out of D (Drive) or N (Neutral) the system will enter the CTA mode (see CTA operation below). Once shifted back in to D (Drive) the BLIS® mode will activate once driven above 3 mph (5 km/h).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The BLIS® will trigger the alert for vehicles that enter your blind zone from the rear or merge in to the blind zone from the side. Vehicles that you pass, or a vehicle that enters the blind zone from the front, will trigger the alert only after the vehicle is present in the blind zone for three seconds. **Note:** For vehicles that pass through the blind zone quickly, typically less then two seconds, the BLIS® will not illuminate the alert.

The BLIS® consists of two radar sensors each located at rearward of the rear wheel hidden behind the bumper fascia. Do not place any type of bumper sticker in this area.



**Note:** The BLIS® typically will not detect parked vehicles, humans, animals, or infrastructure (fences, guard rails, trees, etc.). The BLIS® does not function when the transmission is in R (Reverse) or P (Park). The BLIS® does not provide any additional warning when your turn signal is activated.

**BLIS® detection limitations:** Due to the nature of radar technology, there may be certain instances where vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zones may not be detected. Below is a list of circumstances that may cause non-detection:

- Debris build up on the rear quarter panel fascias
- Certain maneuvering of vehicles entering and exiting the blind zone
- Vehicles passing through the blind zone at very fast rates
- Severe weather conditions
- When several vehicles forming a convoy pass through the blind zone.

**BLIS® False Alerts**

Due to the nature of radar technology, there may be certain instances when the BLIS® will alert with no object present in the blind zone. This is known as a false alert. Some level of false alerts are normal. Circumstances that may cause a false alert are guardrails, freeway concrete walls, cyclone fencing, sharp turns around a pole or building, or coming to a stop with a vehicle directly behind but very close. False alerts are temporary and self correct.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

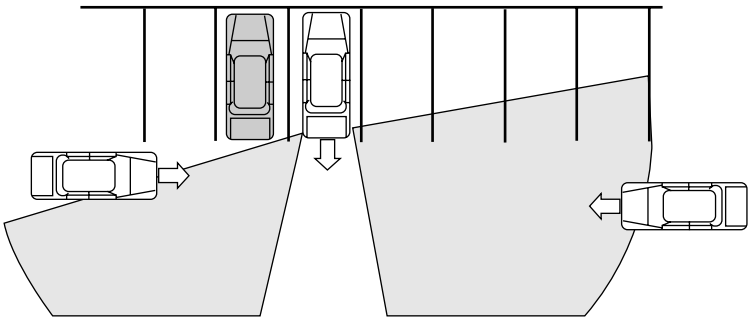
### Cross traffic alert (CTA) system operation

The CTA system warns the driver of approaching vehicles when R (Reverse) is selected and the vehicle is backing out of a front-in parking spot. It sounds a series of tones and flashes the BLIS® indicator found on the exterior mirror on the side of the approaching vehicle. Additionally, the message center will display either, VEHICLE COMING FROM RIGHT or VEHICLE COMING FROM LEFT to warn the driver from which direction vehicles are approaching.

The system is not designed to prevent contact with other vehicles or objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting vehicles in the blind zones. The system will not detect infrastructure, pedestrians, or bicyclists.

**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, NEVER use the CTA system as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors and looking over your shoulder before backing out of a parking space. CTA is not a replacement for careful driving and only an assist.

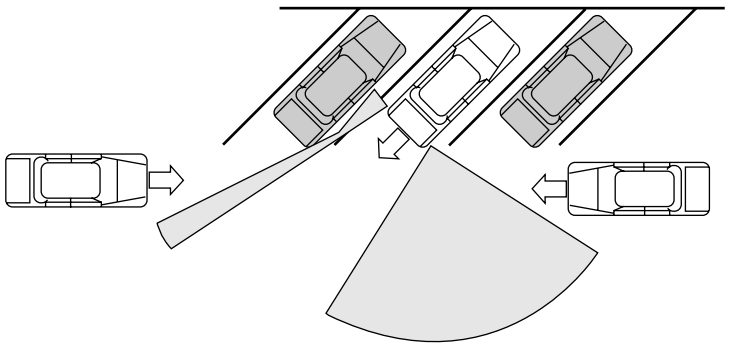
The CTA system detects vehicles approaching up to 45 feet (14 meters) away (approximately the width of five parking spaces). Coverage decreases when vehicles and objects in close proximity block the CTA sensors (refer to figure for approximate zone coverage areas **[sensor obstructed for vehicle on left]**). Backing slowly from the parking spot in these situations helps to increase the sensor coverage and effectiveness.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CTA coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles (refer to figure for approximate zone coverage areas **[sensor obstructed for vehicle on left]**).



**CTA detection limitations:** Due to the nature of radar technology, there may be certain instances where vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zones may not be detected. Below is a list of circumstances that may cause non-detection:

- Debris build up on the rear quarter panel fascias
- The rear quarter panel radar beams are obstructed or partially obstructed by an adjacently parked vehicle or object.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 15 mph (24 km/h)
- Severe weather conditions
- Driving in reverse faster than 3 mph (5 km/h)
- Backing out of an angled parking spot

**CTA False Alerts**

Due to the nature of radar technology, there may be certain instances when the BLIS® will alert with no object present when backing up. This is known as a false alert. Some level of false alerts are normal. Circumstances that may cause a false alert when backing up are backing out of a garage, backing in to a parking space, and objects very close to the sensor. False alerts are temporary and self correct.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### CTA and Reverse Sensing System (RSS) interaction

CTA works along with the Reverse Sensing System (RSS) (if equipped). Become familiar with the warning tones of both systems.

### BLIS® and/or CTA on/off and disable operation

The BLIS® and/or the CTA can be turned off via the message center. If either the BLIS® and/or the CTA is turned off, the systems will automatically turn back on at the next ignition key cycle. When either the BLIS® and/or the CTA is turned off, the message center displays BLIND SPOT SYS OFF and/or CTA SYSTEM OFF. When the BLIS® and/or the CTA system is off, the driver will not receive alerts. Refer to *Message center* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

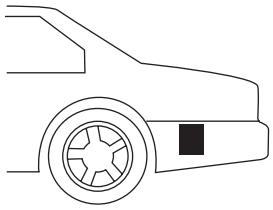
**Note:** If the system cannot be turned off, refer to *MyKey™* in the *Locks and Security* chapter for more information.

The BLIS® and/or the CTA can be disabled permanently even after an ignition key cycle. This must be done by your authorized dealer. **Note:** Once either of the systems are disabled, enabling must also be performed at the dealership. When disabled, the message center will display BLIND SPOT DISABLED and/or CTA DISABLED.

### BLIS® and/or CTA fault operation

If the BLIS® and/or CTA senses a fault on either the left or right sensor, the BLIS® alert indicator will go on and remain on and the message center will display BLIND SPOT SYSTEM FAULT or CROSS TRAFFIC SYSTEM FAULT. For faults that may cause the associated left or right alert indicator not to illuminate, only the message center faults will occur.

### Blocked sensor



An extreme build-up of materials on the quarter panel fascias such as mud or snow can cause degraded performance of the BLIS®. Also, heavy rain can cause the same effect. The BLIS® can detect this degraded performance and issue a blocked warning to the driver via the message center. If a condition is determined by the system, the message center displays BLIND SPOT NOT AVAILABLE or CROSS TRAFFIC NOT AVAILABLE warning and the appropriate left and/or right exterior mirror alert indicator will illuminate. The message center warning may be cleared by the driver but the exterior mirror alert indicator will remain illuminated.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Just prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and alerting the driver, the number of missed objects will increase. To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the BLIS® as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. BLIS® is not a replacement for careful driving and only an assist.

Once the blockage is removed, the system will require some driving time and detection of at least two vehicle objects prior to resetting or the driver can cycle the ignition key. If, however, blockage is still present after the key cycle, the system will sense again that it is blocked after driving in traffic.

The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message being displayed:

| | |
|---|---|
| The surface of the radar is dirty or obstructed in some way | Clean the fascia area in front of the radar, either side, or remove obstruction. |
| The surface of the radar is not dirty or obstructed | Drive normally in traffic for a few minutes to allow the radar to detect that it is no longer blocked. **Note:** The vehicle must be in D (Drive) and a few vehicles must pass so that the BLIS® can clear a blocked state. |
| Heavy rainfall or heavy snowfall is interfering with the radar signals | No action required by the driver. The system will automatically reset to an unblocked state once the rainfall/snowfall rate decreases or stops. Do not use BLIS® and/or CTA in heavy rainfall or heavy snowfall. |

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning and not be blocked. This is rare and known as a false blockage warning. A false blocked condition will either self clear or clear after a key cycle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Trailer tow false alerts**

When towing a trailer, the sensors may detect the trailer thus causing a false alert. It may be desirable to turn the BLIS® off if the false alerts become annoying.

**Day and night brightness**

The BLIS® and/or CTA alert will automatically dim when the headlamp switch is in PARK, ON, or AUTO ON and night time darkness has been detected by the sun sensor.

## ALL WHEEL DRIVE (AWD) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a full-time All Wheel Drive (AWD) system. The AWD system is an active system, meaning it not only responds to wheel slip between the front and rear axles but also has the ability to anticipate wheel slip and transfer torque to the rear wheels before slip occurs. The AWD system is active all the time and requires no input from the operator.

All components of the AWD system are sealed for life and require no maintenance.

**Note:** When an AWD system fault is present, the warning **CHECK AWD** will display in the message center. The AWD system is not functioning correctly and defaulted to front wheel drive. When this warning is displayed, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer

If your vehicle is equipped with AWD, a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided should never be used. If the spare tire is installed, the AWD system may disable automatically and enter front wheel drive only mode to protect driveline components. This condition may be indicated by an **AWD OFF** message in the message center (see *Message center* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information). If there is an **AWD OFF** message in the message center from using the spare tire, this indicator should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced normal road tire and driving a short distance. It is recommended to reinstall the repaired or replaced road tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause the AWD system to stop functioning and default to front wheel drive or damage the AWD system.

**Note:** The **AWD OFF** message may also be displayed in the message center if the AWD system has overheated and defaulted to front wheel drive. This condition may occur if the vehicle was operated in extreme conditions with excessive wheel slip, such as deep sand. To resume normal AWD function as soon as possible, stop the vehicle in a safe



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

location and allow it to idle. The **AWD OFF** message will turn off when the system cools and normal AWD function returns.

**Note:** Your AWD vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle under other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

### Driving on slippery surfaces with AWD vehicles

AWD vehicles are specially equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the highway.

When driving at slow speeds off-highway under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. A lower gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

#### *Basic operating principles*

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

#### *If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement*

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or rollover. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *If your vehicle gets stuck*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

If your vehicle is equipped with Traction Control™, it may be beneficial to disengage the Traction Control™ system while attempting to rock the vehicle.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.**

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

### *Emergency maneuvers*

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid “over-driving” your vehicle (i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

### *AWD Systems (if equipped)*

AWD uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

### *Sand*

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use a low gear when possible. Lower gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

### *Mud and water*

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even AWD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

If the engine, transmission, AWD system components or axles are submerged in water, their fluids should be checked and changed, if necessary.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Driving through deep water may damage the engine or transmission.**

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and PTU (Power Transfer Unit) lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.




"Tread Lightly" is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nations wilderness areas. Ford Motor Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by "treading lightly."

### *Driving on hilly or sloping terrain*

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down. **Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills.** A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

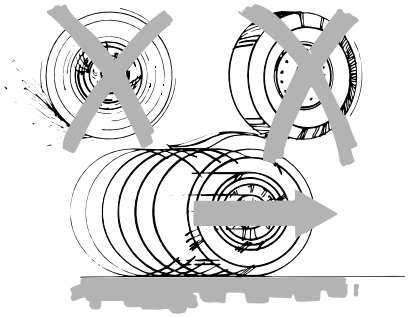
When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, Do not try to turn around because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle.

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not "pump" the brakes.

### *Driving on snow and ice*

**Note:** Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.

AWD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although an AWD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. Since your vehicle is equipped with a four wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS), do not "pump" the brakes. Refer to the *Brakes* section of this chapter for additional information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system.

**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of the vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Maintenance and Modifications*

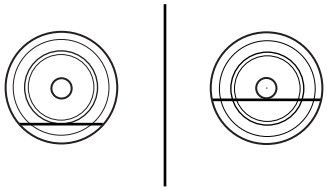
The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will rollover as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder or luggage racks).

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to heavy off-highway usage.

### DRIVING THROUGH WATER

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly especially when the depth is not known. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall. **Driving through deep water where the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.**

**Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.** Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

### Getting roadside assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24–hours, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner Guide portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit)
- battery jump start
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility)
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5.0 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford/Mercury/Lincoln eligible vehicle towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to $200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

**Canadian customers refer to your Customer Information Guide for information on:**

- coverage period
- exact fuel amounts



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- towing of your disabled vehicle
- emergency travel expense reimbursement
- travel planning benefits

In Canada, for uninterrupted Roadside Assistance coverage, you may purchase extended coverage prior to your Basic Warranty's Roadside Assistance expiring. For more information and enrollment, contact 1–877–294–2582 or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

### Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In the United States, this card is found in the Owner Guide portfolio in the glove compartment. In Canada, the card is found in the *Customer Information Guide* in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford, Mercury and Lincoln vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford, Mercury and Lincoln vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

Canadian customers who need to obtain reimbursement information, call 1–800–665–2006.

### HAZARD FLASHER CONTROL

The hazard flasher control is located on the instrument panel by the radio. The hazard flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition.



Press in the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash. Press the flasher control again to turn them off. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

**Note:** With extended use, the flasher may run down your battery.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle is equipped with a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision due to this feature, you may restart your vehicle by doing the following:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the off position.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the on position.

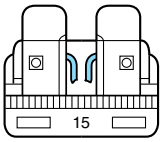
In some instances the vehicle may not restart the first time you try to restart and may take one additional attempt.

**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and if necessary repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

## FUSES AND RELAYS

### Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.




**Note:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

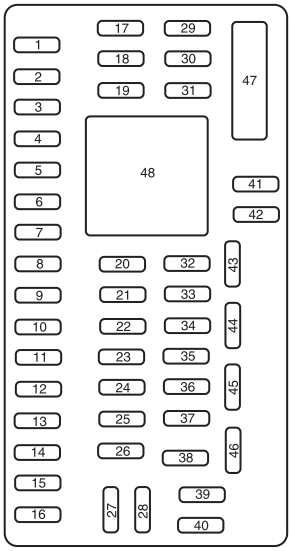
***Standard fuse amperage rating and color***

| COLOR | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Fuse rating** | **Mini fuses** | **Standard fuses** | **Maxi fuses** | **Cartridge maxi fuses** | **Fuse link cartridge** |
| 2A | Grey | Grey | — | — | — |
| 3A | Violet | Violet | — | — | — |
| 4A | Pink | Pink | — | — | — |
| 5A | Tan | Tan | — | — | — |
| 7.5A | Brown | Brown | — | — | — |
| 10A | Red | Red | — | — | — |
| 15A | Blue | Blue | — | — | — |
| 20A | Yellow | Yellow | Yellow | Blue | Blue |
| 25A | Natural | Natural | — | — | — |
| 30A | Green | Green | Green | Pink | Pink |
| 40A | — | — | Orange | Green | Green |
| 50A | — | — | Red | Red | Red |
| 60A | — | — | Blue | Yellow | Yellow |
| 70A | — | — | Tan | — | Brown |
| 80A | — | — | Natural | Black | Black |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Passenger compartment fuse panel




The fuse panel is located under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

The fuses are coded as follows.

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 30A | Right rear smart window |
| 2 | 15A | Refrigerator |
| 3 | 15A | Driver seat switch, 2nd row lumbar switches |
| 4 | 30A | Right front smart window |
| 5 | 10A | Brake transmission shift interlock, 3rd row power fold module |
| 6 | 20A | Turn signals |
| 7 | 10A | Low beam headlamps (left) |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 8 | 10A | Low beam headlamps (right) |
| 9 | 15A | Interior lights, Cargo lamps |
| 10 | 15A | Backlighting, Puddle lamps |
| 11 | 10A | All wheel drive (AWD) |
| 12 | 7.5A | Intelligent access (IA) |
| 13 | 5A | Memory switches, IA receiver, Exterior mirror switch, Steering column position switch, Driver seat module, Driver door module, Keypad |
| 14 | 10A | Power liftgate module, SYNC®; Rear entertainment |
| 15 | 10A | Climate control, Electronic finish panel |
| 16 | 15A | Navigation display, ALM, Auxiliary climate control |
| 17 | 20A | All power lock motor feeds, Liftgate release |
| 18 | 20A | Amplifier |
| 19 | 25A | Amplifier |
| 20 | 15A | Data link connector, 2nd row power fold seat motors |
| 21 | 15A | Fog lamps |
| 22 | 15A | Park lamps, License plate lamps, Illuminated liftgate applique |
| 23 | 15A | High beam headlamps, Auto high beam relay, Fog lamp deactivation relay |
| 24 | 20A | Horn |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 25 | 10A | Demand lamps/Interior lamps, 2nd row power fold seats, Powertrain control module (GTDI) wake-up, 3rd row seat relay |
| 26 | 10A | Instrument panel cluster, Heads up display |
| 27 | 20A | Ignition Switch, IA |
| 28 | 5A | Radio mute |
| 29 | 5A | Instrument panel cluster |
| 30 | 5A | Transmission shifter |
| 31 | 10A | Steering angle sensor, Heads up display |
| 32 | 10A | Restraint control module |
| 33 | 10A | Adaptive lighting module |
| 34 | 5A | Front body run/start feeds |
| 35 | 10A | Body module run/start feeds |
| 36 | 5A | Passive anti-theft system module |
| 37 | 10A | Powertrain control module run/start, Fuel relay |
| 38 | 20A | Trailer tow park lamps |
| 39 | 20A | Audio control module |
| 40 | 20A | Cigarette lighter |
| 41 | 15A | Delayed accessory feeds |
| 42 | 10A | Not used (spare) |
| 43 | 10A | Auxiliary blower, Rear wiper, Rain sensor |
| 44 | 10A | Trailer tow backup lamps |
| 45 | 5A | Front wiper, Front blower, Wiper relay |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 46 | 7.5A | Occupant classification sensor (OCS), Passenger airbag deactivation indicator (PADI), Front control interface module |
| 47 | 30A Circuit Breaker | Not used |
| 48 | Full ISO relay | Delayed accessory relay |

### Power distribution box

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

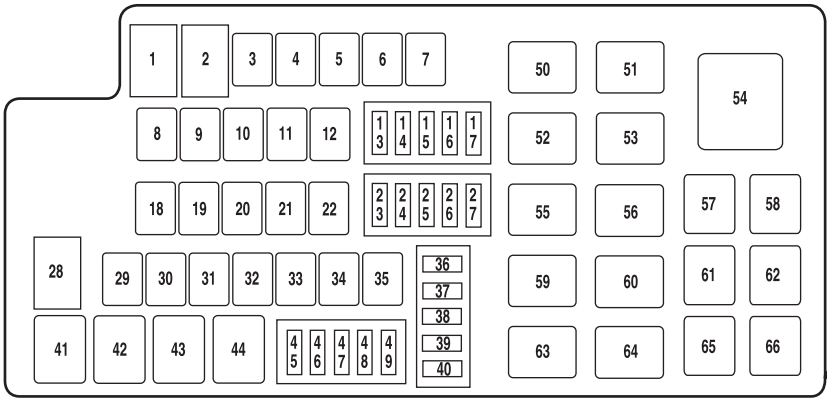
**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the Power Distribution Box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine




The high-current fuses are coded as follows:

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | — | Not used |
| 2 | — | Not used |
| 3 | 30A* | Trailer tow brake controller |
| 4 | 40A* | Wiper relay (front and rear) |
| 5 | 30A* | Passenger power seat |
| 6 | 30A* | 110V AC inverter |
| 7 | 30A* | Rear climate control seat module |
| 8 | 30A* | Front climate control seat module |
| 9 | 40A* | Anti-lock brake system (ABS) pump |
| 10 | 30A* | Starter |
| 11 | 30A* | Powertrain control module (PCM) vehicle power |
| 12 | 20A* | ABS valve |
| 13 | 20A** | Right high intensity discharge (HID) headlamp |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 14 | 10A** | Brake on/off (BOO) switch, Adaptive cruise relay |
| 15 | 15A** | Automatic high beams, Adaptive cruise control |
| 16 | 20A** | Left HID headlamp |
| 17 | 10A** | Alternator sensor |
| 18 | 30A* | 3rd row power seats |
| 19 | 20A* | Front console power point |
| 20 | 40A* | Rear defroster, Heated mirrors |
| 21 | 20A* | Rear console power point |
| 22 | 40A* | Trailer tow battery charge, Trailer tow stop/turn lamps fuse 45 power |
| 23 | 10A** | PCM keep alive power, Canister vent, Relay coil |
| 24 | 10A** | A/C clutch |
| 25 | 20A** | Rear power point |
| 26 | 15A** | Backup lamps |
| 27 | 15A** | Fuel relay (Fuel pump driver module, Fuel pump) |
| 28 | 80A* | Cooling fan |
| 29 | 30A* | Left rear smart window, Panoramic roof module, Power sunshade module |
| 30 | 30A* | Left front smart window |
| 31 | 40A* | Auxiliary blower motor |
| 32 | 30A* | Driver seat motor |
| 33 | 30A* | Run/start relay |
| 34 | 30A* | Power liftgate |
| 35 | 40A* | Front A/C blower |
| 36 | 25A** | Rear wiper module |
| 37 | 15A** | Washer pump |
| 38 | 10A** | Trailer tow backup lamps |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 39 | Diode | Fuel diode |
| 40 | Diode | One touch integrated start diode |
| 41 | G8VA relay | Trailer tow park lamp |
| 42 | G8VA relay | Trailer tow stop/turn lamp (left) |
| 43 | G8VA relay | Trailer tow stop/turn lamp (right) |
| 44 | G8VA relay | Backup lamps relay |
| 45 | 20A** | Trailer tow stop/turn lamps |
| 46 | 15A** | PCM vehicle power 2, Vehicle power 3 |
| 47 | 20A** | PCM vehicle power 1 |
| 48 | 15A** | PCM vehicle power 4 |
| 49 | 10A** | Heated mirrors |
| 50 | HC micro relay | Blower motor |
| 51 | HC micro relay | Fog lamp deactivation |
| 52 | HC micro relay | Starter |
| 53 | HC micro relay | Adaptive cruise control |
| 54 | — | Not used |
| 55 | HC micro relay | Wipers |
| 56 | HC micro relay | Rear window defroster, Heated mirrors |
| 57 | — | Not used |
| 58 | — | Not used |
| 59 | HC micro relay | Auxiliary blower motor |
| 60 | HC micro relay | Trailer tow battery charge |
| 61 | G8VA relay | Refrigerator |
| 62 | G8VA relay | Automatic high beams |
| 63 | HC micro relay | Run/start |
| 64 | HC micro relay | PCM |
| 65 | G8VA relay | A/C clutch |
| 66 | G8VA relay | Fuel pump |
| * Cartridge Fuses ** Mini Fuses | | |



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## CHANGING THE TIRES

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full functionality of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensors, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the TPMS sensor for damage.

**WARNING:** The use of tire sealants may damage your Tire Pressure Monitoring System and should only be used if it is supplied with your vehicle as part of the original temporary mobility kit.

**WARNING:** Refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

### Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information

**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire/wheel that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter "T" for tire size and may have "Temporary Use Only" molded in the sidewall

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: "THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY"

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Tow a trailer
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire/wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-Wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

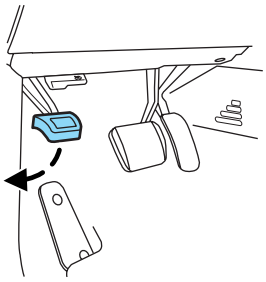
When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel and seek service as soon as possible.

### Stopping and securing the vehicle

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate hazard flashers.
2. Place gearshift lever in P (Park) and turn engine off.

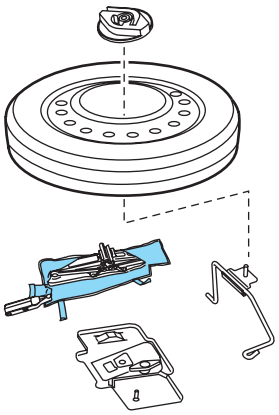


#### *Removing the spare tire and jack*

If the 3rd row seat is stowed in the floor, you will need to unstow it to access the spare tire and jack. Refer to *Unstowing the third row seat* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter for this procedure.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



1. Remove the carpeted floor panel located in the rear of the vehicle, remove the wing nut that secures the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
2. Lift and remove the spare tire from the trunk.
3. Remove the second wing nut that secures the jack retention bracket by turning it counterclockwise, remove the jack kit from the vehicle.
4. Remove the jack, L-shaped bolt, and the wrench from the felt bag. Fold down the wrench socket to use to loosen the lug nuts and to operate the jack.

### *Tire change procedure*

**WARNING:** When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transaxle alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the vehicle is in P (Park).

**WARNING:** To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure to place the transmission in P (Park), set the parking brake and block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.

**WARNING:** If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

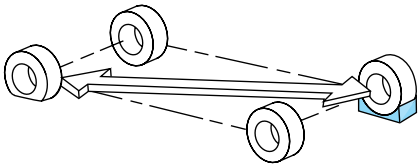
**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

**Note:** Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

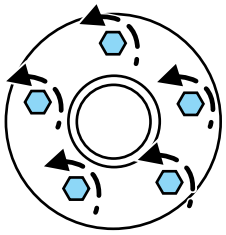


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.



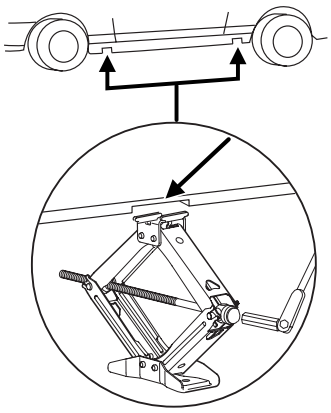
2. Remove wheel cover (if equipped) with the lug wrench tip and loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



3. Put the jack in the jack notch next to the tire you are changing. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.

4. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

5. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

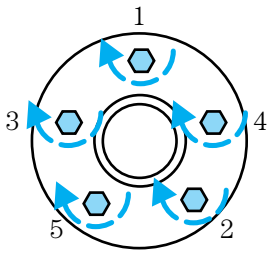


6. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

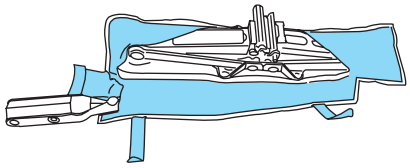
7. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.




8. Install the wheel cover (if equipped).

### *Stowing the tire and jack*

1. Fully collapse the jack, fold the lug wrench socket into the handle and place the jack and wrench into the felt bag as shown. Place the extension bolt or L-shaped bolt into the external pocket of the felt bag. Take care to position the jack as shown to ensure that the locating holes in the jack base can be placed on the locating tabs of the jack mounting bracket in the spare tire tub.



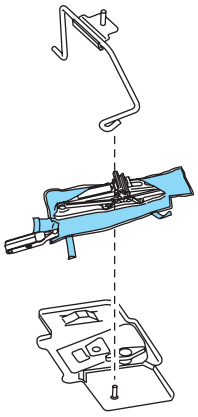
2. Securely close the wrench compartment and the jack bag using the Velcro® strips.

3. Place the jack kit on the angled bracket in the spare tire tub, using the locating tabs to position the jack correctly.

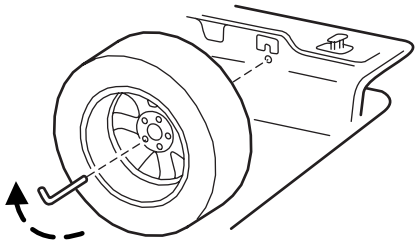


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Insert the straight end of the jack retention bracket through the eyelet of the angled bracket and swing the retention bracket over the jack. With the jack in place, place the looped end of the retention bracket over the threaded stud in the trunk floor and secure it with the plastic wing nut.



**If you are stowing the flat tire,** remove the L-shaped bolt from from the external pocket of the felt bag. With the 3rd row seat in the raised position, stand the flat tire in the rear of the vehicle with the tire's valve stem facing the rear of the vehicle. Fasten the flat tire to the vehicle by inserting the L-shaped bolt through one of the lug bolt holes in the wheel and turning clockwise into the threaded hole in the vehicle until the tire is secured.



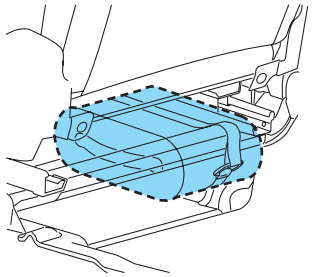
**If you are stowing the temporary spare tire,** place the tire over the jack and secure it with the large wing nut.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a temporary mobility kit (located under the driver's seat). To remove the temporary mobility kit, move the driver's seat fully forward and undo the Velcro® strap that attaches it to the rear of the seat frame.



To replace the temporary mobility kit, open the Velcro® strap on the bag and slide the bag back under the driver's seat. Wrap the strap over the rear frame bar, loop it through the buckle and secure the bag to the seat frame.

The temporary mobility kit consists of an air compressor to reinflate the tire and a sealing compound in a canister that will effectively seal most punctures caused by nails or similar objects. This kit will provide a temporary seal allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 120 miles (200 km) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).

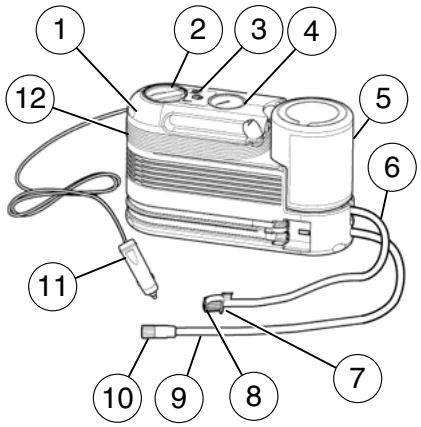
**WARNING:** When towing a trailer, use the temporary mobility kit and not the mini spare tire if necessary. The mini spare tire is not intended for the higher towing load limits of this vehicle. When towing heavy loads with the mini spare tire, vehicle handling may be diminished, which could lead to loss of control, and serious personal injury.

**Note:** The temporary mobility kit sealant compound in the canister is to be used for one tire only. See your authorized dealer for additional replacement sealant canisters.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. Air compressor (inside)
2. Diverter knob
3. On/Off switch
4. Air pressure gauge
5. Sealant bottle/canister
6. Sealant filling clear tube
7. Sealant tube — tire valve connector
8. Yellow cap tool
9. Air compressor hose
10. Air hose — tire valve connector
11. Accessory power plug
12. Casing/housing




### General information

**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than ¼ inch (6.4 mm) or damage to the tire's sidewall. The tire may not completely seal.

**Note:** Do not use the temporary mobility kit if a tire has become severely damaged by driving the vehicle with a tire that has insufficient air pressure. Only punctured areas located within the tire tread can be sealed with the temporary mobility kit.

Loss of air pressure may adversely affect tire performance. For this reason:

- **Do not** drive the vehicle above 50 mph (80 km/h).
- **Do not** drive further than 120 miles (200 km). Drive only to the closest Ford Motor Company authorized dealer or tire repair shop to have your tire inspected.
- Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers.
- Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Read the information in the *Tips for use of the temporary mobility kit* section to ensure safe operation of the temporary mobility kit and your vehicle.

### Tips for use of the temporary mobility kit

Read the following list of tips to ensure safe operation of the temporary mobility kit:

- Before operating the temporary mobility kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic. Turn on the hazard lights.
- Always set the parking brake to ensure the vehicle doesn't move unexpectedly.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- When using the temporary mobility kit, leave the engine running **(only if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area)** so the compressor doesn't drain the vehicle's battery.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes; this will help prevent the compressor from overheating.
- Never leave the temporary mobility kit unattended when it is operating.
- Sealant compound contains latex. Make sure that you use the non-latex gloves provided to avoid an allergic reaction.
- Keep the temporary mobility kit away from children.
- Only use the temporary mobility kit when the ambient temperature is between -22°F (–30°C) and 158°F (70°C).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use by date. The use by date is on the lower right hand corner of the label located on the sealant canister (bottle). **Check the use by date regularly and replace the canister after four years**.
- Do not store the temporary mobility kit unsecured inside the passenger compartment of the vehicle as it may cause injury during a sudden stop or collision. Always store the kit in its original location.
- After sealant use, the TPMS sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized Ford dealer.
- When inflating a tire or other objects, use the black air hose only. Do not use the transparent hose which is designed for sealant application only.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Operating the temporary mobility kit could cause an electrical disturbance in radio and DVD player operation.

### What to do when a tire is punctured

A tire puncture within the tire's tread area can be repaired in two stages with the temporary mobility kit:

- In the first stage, the tire will be reinflated with a sealing compound and air. After the tire has been reinflated, you will need to drive the vehicle a short distance (approximately 4 miles [6 km]) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, you will need to check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's tire inflation pressure.

### First stage: Reinflating the tire with sealing compound and air

**Preparation**

Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic. Turn the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and turn the engine off. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

Sealant compound contains latex. To avoid any allergic reactions, use the non-latex gloves located in the accessory box on the underside of the temporary mobility kit housing.

Do not remove any foreign object that has pierced the tire. If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.

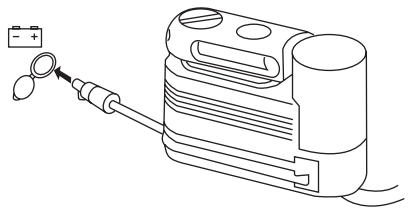
2. Unwrap the clear tube from the compressor housing.

3. Remove the tube cap and fasten the metal connector of the tube to the tire valve, turning clockwise. Make sure the connection is tightly fastened.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

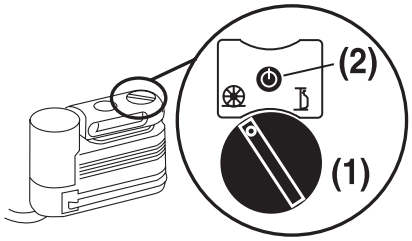
4. Plug the power cable into the 12V power point in the vehicle.



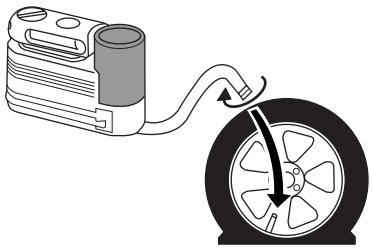
5. Remove the warning sticker found on the canister and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.

6. Start the engine **(only if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area)**.

7. Turn dial (1) counterclockwise to the sealant position. Turn on the kit by pressing the on/off button (2).




8. Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label located on the driver's door or the door jam area.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note: When the sealing compound is first added into the tire, the air pressure gauge reading on the compressor unit may indicate a higher value; this is normal and should be no reason for concern. The pressure will drop after about 30 seconds of operation. The tire pressure has to be checked with the compressor in the OFF position to get the correct tire pressure reading.**

**WARNING:** Do not stand directly over the temporary mobility kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.

**WARNING:** If the tire doesn't inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

9. When the recommended tire pressure is reached, turn off the kit by pressing the on/off button; disconnect the kit from the tire valve and the power point. Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve, place the tube cap on the metal connector, and return the kit to the stowage area.

10. **Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 4 miles (6 km) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).**

**Note:** If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. **Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.**

11. After 4 miles (6 km), stop and check the tire pressure. See *Second stage: Checking tire pressure.*

### Second stage: Checking tire pressure

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.

2. Unhook the black hose from the side of the compressor and fasten firmly on the valve stem by turning clockwise.

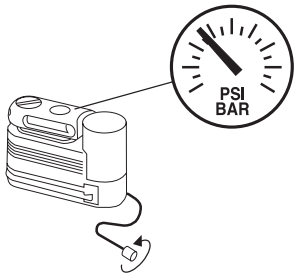
**WARNING:** If you are proceeding from the *First stage: Reinflating the tire with sealing compound and air* section and have injected sealant in the tire and the pressure is below 20 psi (1.4 bar), **stop and call roadside assistance.** If tire pressure is above 20 psi (1.4 bar), continue to the next step.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Turn the dial clockwise to the air position. Turn on the kit by pressing the on/off button.

4. Adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure from the tire label located on the driver's door or door jam area.




**Note:** The tire pressure has to be checked with the compressor in the OFF position to get the correct tire pressure reading.

5. Turn the compressor off by pressing the on/off button.

6. Unplug the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the stowage area.

**WARNING:** The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully while unplugging.

### What to do after the tire has been sealed

After using the temporary mobility kit to seal your tire, you will need to replace the sealant canister and clear tube (hose). Sealing compound and spare parts can be obtained and replaced at an authorized Ford Motor Company dealership or tire dealer. Empty sealant bottles may be disposed of at home; however, liquid residue from the sealing compound should be disposed by your local Ford Motor Company dealership or tire dealer, or in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

**Note:** After the sealing compound has been used, the maximum vehicle speed is 50 mph (80 km/h) and the maximum driving distance is 120 miles (200 km). The sealed tire should be inspected immediately.

**Note:** After sealant use, the TPMS sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized Ford dealer.

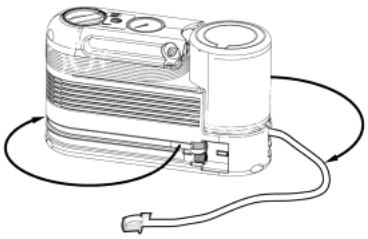
You can check the tire pressure any time within the 120 miles (200 km) by performing the procedure from *Second stage: Checking tire pressure* listed previously.



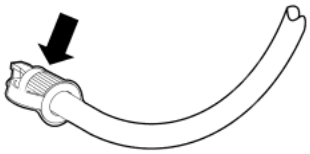
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Removal of the Sealant Canister from the Temporary Mobility Kit**

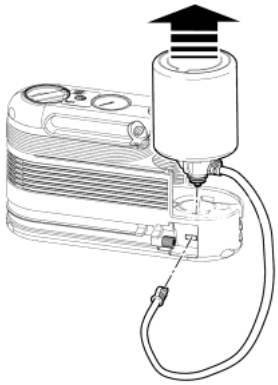
1. Unwrap the clear tube from the compressor housing.



2. Locate the yellow cap at the end of the clear tube.



3. Using the yellow cap tool, press the tab located on the temporary mobility kit compressor housing while pulling up on the sealant canister.



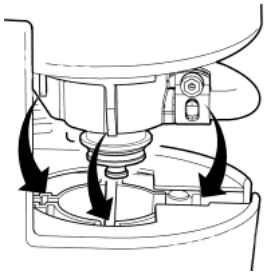




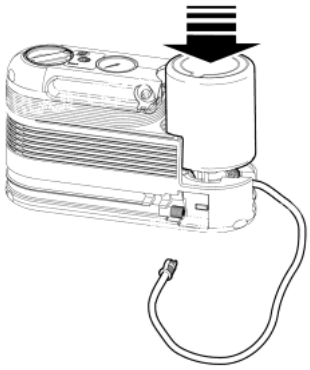
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Installation of the Sealant Canister to the Temporary Mobility Kit**

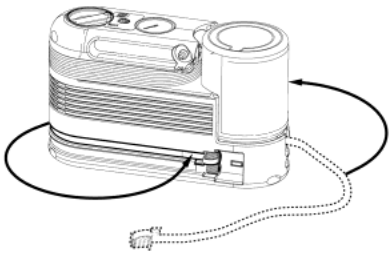
1. Align the sealant canister with the temporary mobility kit housing.



2. Once aligned, seat the sealant canister by lightly pushing down until you hear an audible click.



3. Wrap the clear tube around the compressor housing.







Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note:** If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, consult your Ford Motor Company authorized dealer for assistance.

Be sure to check the sealant compound's "use by" date regularly. The "use by" date is on the lower right hand corner of the label located on the sealant canister (bottle). The sealant canister should be replaced after four years.

**Use By / Utiliser avant:**

### WHEEL LUG NUT TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

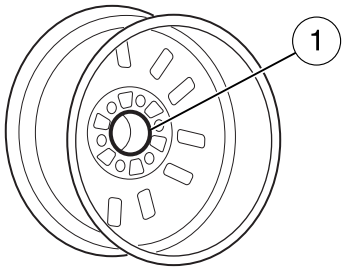
| Bolt size | Wheel lug nut torque* | |
|---|---|---|
| | lb.ft. | N•m |
| 1/2-20 UNF | 100 | 135 |
| * Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners. | | |

**WARNING:** When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**Note:** Inspect the wheel pilot hole prior to installation. If there is visible corrosion in wheel pilot hole, remove loose particles by wiping with clean rag and apply grease. Apply grease only to the wheel pilot hole surface by smearing a “dime” (1 square cm) sized glob of grease around the wheel pilot surface (1) with end of finger. DO NOT apply grease to lugnut/stud holes or wheel-to-brake surfaces.




### RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

If you have run out of fuel and need to refill the vehicle with a portable fuel container, see *Running out of fuel* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for proper fuel filling method using a portable fuel container and the included fuel filler funnel. **Do not** insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or any type of aftermarket funnels into the Easy Fuel™ “no cap” fuel system as it can be damaged. You must use the included funnel in such circumstances.

**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the Easy Fuel™ system. This could damage the fuel system and its seal, and may cause fuel to run onto the ground instead of filling the tank, all of which could result in serious personal injury.

### JUMP STARTING

**WARNING:** The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.

**WARNING:** Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

**Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Preparing your vehicle

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

1. **Use only a 12–volt supply to start your vehicle.**

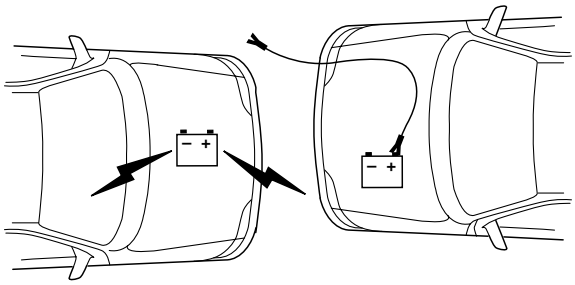
2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.

4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.

5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

### Connecting the jumper cables

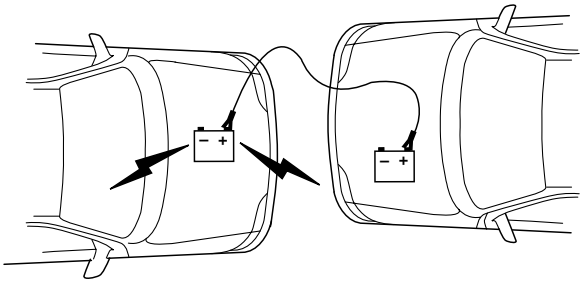


1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

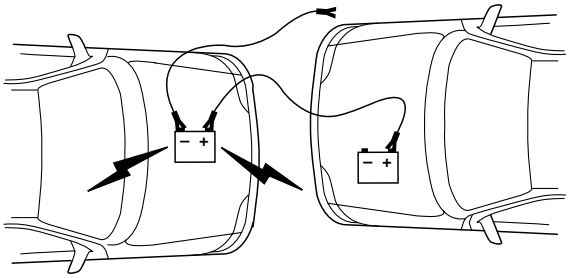
**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



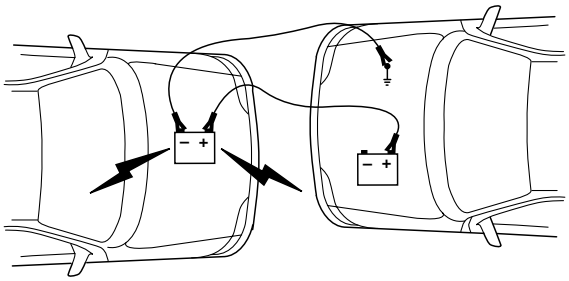
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.



3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system.

**Note:** Do not attach the negative (-) cable to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as *grounding* points.

**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

5. Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

### Jump starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.

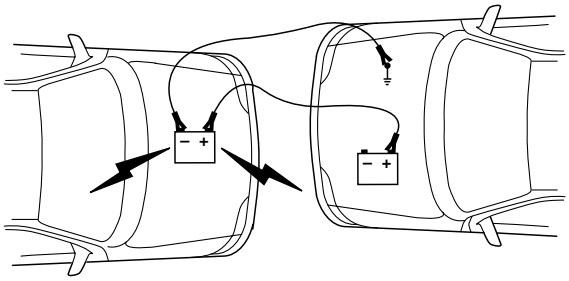
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

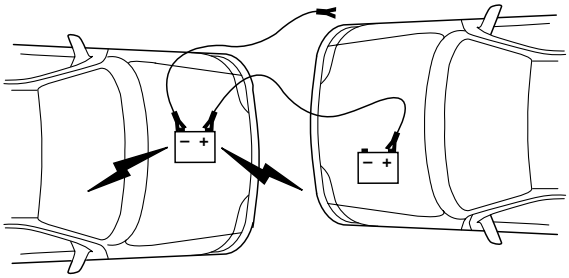
### Removing the jumper cables



**Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.**

1. Remove the jumper cable from the *ground* metal surface.

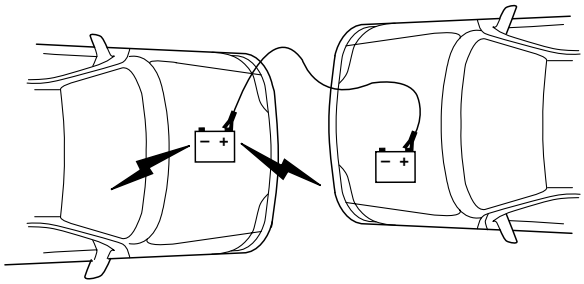
**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



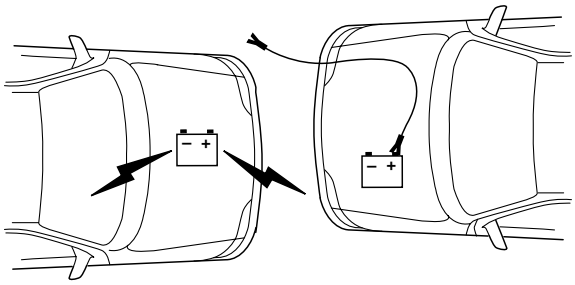
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) connection of the booster vehicle's battery.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.



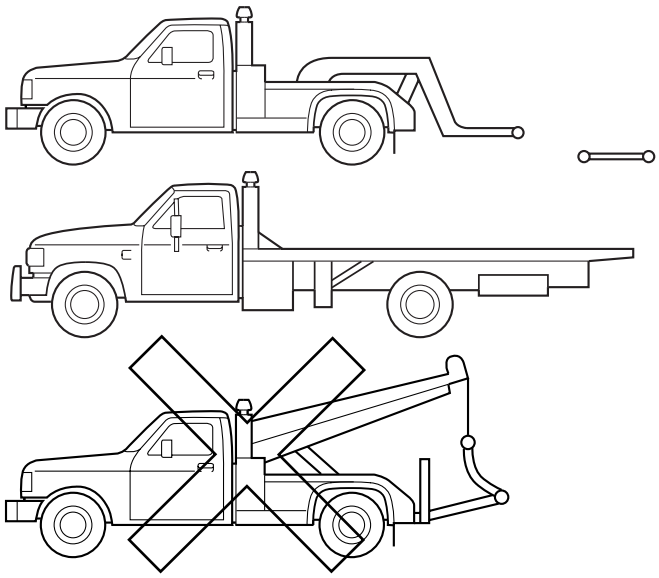
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can *relearn* its idle conditions.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## WRECKER TOWING



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

On FWD vehicles, if your vehicle is to be towed from the front, ensure proper wheel lift equipment is used to raise the front wheels off the ground. The rear wheels can be left on the ground when towed in this fashion.

If your vehicle is to be towed from the rear using wheel lift equipment, it is recommended that the front wheels (drive wheels) be placed on a dolly to prevent damage to the automatic transmission.

On AWD vehicles, it is **required** that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground to prevent damage to the automatic transmission, AWD system or vehicle.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.**

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

### Emergency towing

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) your vehicle (regardless of transmission powertrain configuration) can be flat towed (all wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- Vehicle is facing forward so that it is being towed in a forward direction.
- Place the transmission in N (Neutral). Refer to *Brake-shift interlock* in the *Driving* chapter for specific instructions if you cannot move the gear shift lever into N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is not to exceed 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized Ford, Lincoln, or Mercury dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and/or equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away from home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

**Mailing address**
Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121

**Telephone**
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)

**Online**
Additional information and resources are available online at www.genuineservice.com.

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Guides
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Customer Assistance

In Canada:

**Mailing address (Ford vehicles)**
Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

**Telephone**
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

**Online**
www.ford.ca

**Mailing address (Lincoln vehicles)**
Lincoln Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

**Telephone**
1-800-387-9333

**Online**
www.lincolncanada.com

### *Additional assistance*

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.

3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located
- The vehicle's current odometer reading

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

### IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 miles (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR

2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR

3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined on the first page of the *Customer Assistance* section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford must abide by the accepted decision as well. Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE**
**4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800**
**Arlington, Virginia 22203–1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight-forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding both to you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685.

## GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Customer Assistance

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Central America, the Caribbean, or the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (313) 594-4857
FAX: (313) 390-0804
Email: expcac@ford.com

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate outside of the U.S. or Canada, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
P.O. Box 07150
Detroit, Michigan 48207

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website: www.helminc.com.

*(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)*

### Obtaining a French Owner's Guide

French Owner's Guides can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by writing to:

Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
Service Publications CHQ202
The Canadian Road
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, ON, Canada
L6J 5E4





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424–9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov;* or write to:

Administrator
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1–800–333–0510.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Cleaning

## WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A), which is available from your authorized dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time. Use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42) which is available from your authorized dealer.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**

**Exterior chrome**

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- Use Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15), available from your authorized dealer. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- **Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.**
- After polishing chrome bumpers, apply a coating of Motorcraft® Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product to help protect from environmental effects.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Do not use waxes that contain abrasives; use Motorcraft® Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), which is available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will "gray" or stain the parts over time.

## PAINT CHIPS

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver's door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

## ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clearcoat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A), which is available from your authorized dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Chemical-strength cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clearcoat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), available from your authorized dealer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

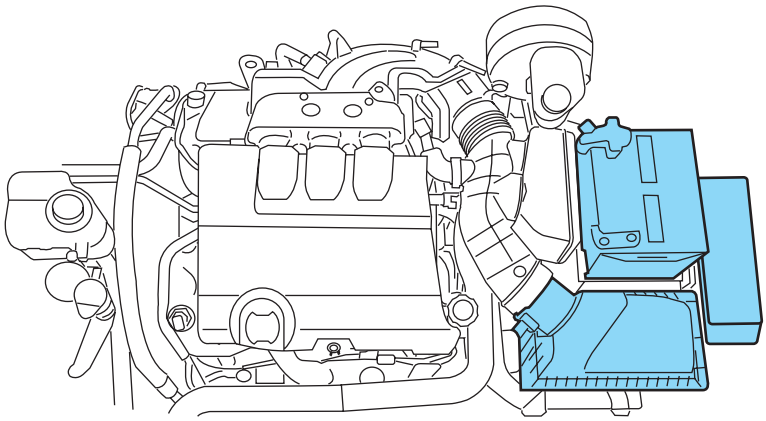
# Cleaning

## ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (CXC-66-A).
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

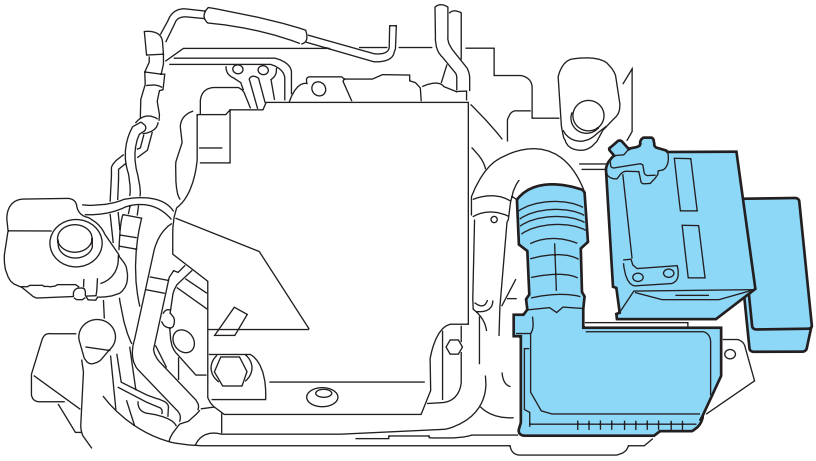
**3.7L V6 Duratec engine**





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine**



## PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your authorized dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).

## WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windshield, rear and side windows and the wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, water repellent coatings, tree sap, or other organic contamination; these contaminants may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windshield, rear windows and side windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23), available from your authorized dealer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (ZC-32-A), available from your authorized dealer. This washer fluid contains special solution in addition to alcohol which helps to remove the hot wax deposited on the wiper blade and windshield from automated car wash facilities. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

If you cannot remove those streaks after cleaning with the glass cleaner or if the wipers chatter and move in a jerky motion, clean the outer surface of the windshield and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaning solution. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

**Do not use sharp objects, such as a razor blade, to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals, as it may cause damage to the rear window defroster's heated grid lines.**

### INSTRUMENT PANEL/INTERIOR TRIM AND CLUSTER LENS

Clean the instrument panel, interior trim areas and cluster lens with a clean, damp, white cotton cloth, then use a clean and dry white cotton cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.

**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, white, cotton cloth.

2. Wipe the surface with a damp, clean, white cotton cloth. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. If the spot cannot be completely cleaned by this method, the area may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive interiors.

3. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area–allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.

4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.

5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

### INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14). In Canada, use Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side-airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Cleaning

## LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

Your leather seating surfaces have a clear, protective coating over the leather.

- For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth. For more thorough cleaning, wipe the surface with a mild soap and water solution. In Canada, use Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93). Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- If the leather cannot be completely cleaned using a mild soap and water solution, the leather may be cleaned using a commercially available cleaning product designed for automotive leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing of the clear, protective coating.

**Note:** In some instances, color or dye transfer can occur when wet clothing comes in contact with leather upholstery. If this occurs, the leather should be cleaned immediately to avoid permanent staining.

## UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

## FORD AND LINCOLN MERCURY CAR CARE PRODUCTS

Your Ford or Lincoln Mercury authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)

Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)

Motorcraft® Custom Clear Coat Polish (ZC-8-A)

Motorcraft® Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)

Motorcraft® Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)

Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)

Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)

Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Cleaning

Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)

Motorcraft® Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A)

Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-32-A)

Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)

Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)

Motorcraft® Tire Clean and Shine (ZC-28)

Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)

Motorcraft® Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)

Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Maintenance and Specifications

## SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

To help you service your vehicle, we provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

## PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

### Working with the engine off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels.

### Working with the engine on

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Block the wheels.

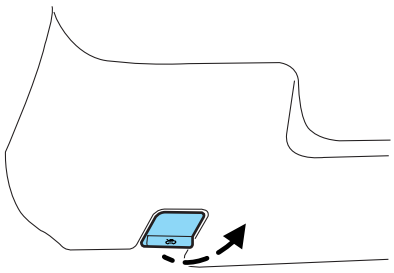
**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.



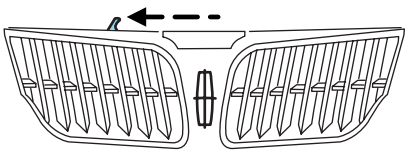
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## OPENING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located at the bottom of the instrument panel near the steering column.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and release the auxiliary latch using the handle that is located under the front passenger side of the hood.



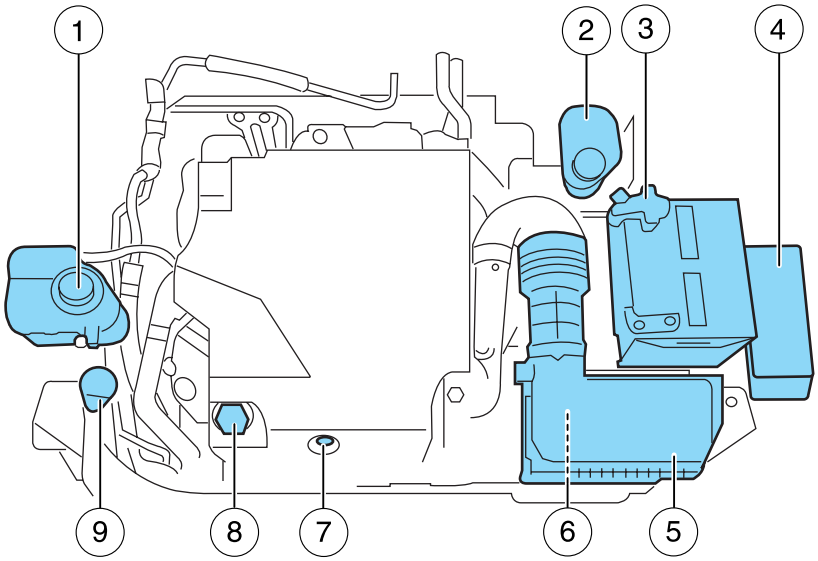
3. Lift the hood until the lift cylinders hold it open.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

### 3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Brake fluid reservoir
3. Battery
4. Power distribution box
5. Air filter assembly
6. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick (out of view)
7. Engine oil dipstick
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

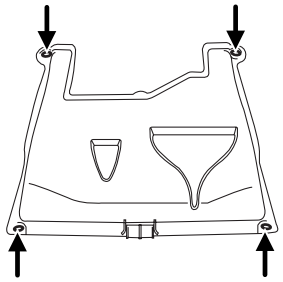




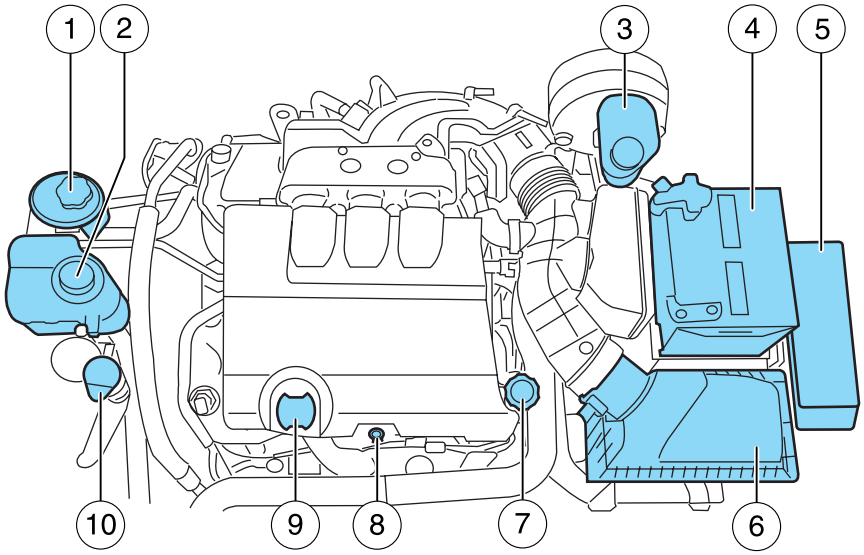
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Engine shield

Some vehicles may be equipped with an aero-shield under the engine. This shield needs to be removed for service, including oil and filter changes. It is secured with four screws.



### 3.7L V6 Duratec engine




1. Power steering fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery
5. Power distribution box
6. Air filter assembly
7. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Engine oil filler cap
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID



Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.

Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specification WSB-M8B16-A2. Do not use any special washer fluid such as windshield water repellent type fluid or bug wash. They may cause squeaking, chatter noise, streaking and smearing. Refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

**Note:** Do not put washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir. Washer fluid placed in the cooling system may harm engine and cooling system components.

#### Checking and adding washer fluid for the liftgate

Washer fluid for the liftgate is supplied by the same reservoir as the windshield.

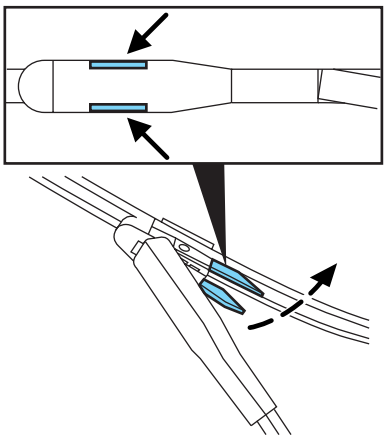


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.

2. Squeeze the locking tabs to release the blade from the arm and pull the blade away from the arm to remove it.



3. Attach the new blade to the arm and snap it into place.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield. Refer to *Windows and wiper blades* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.



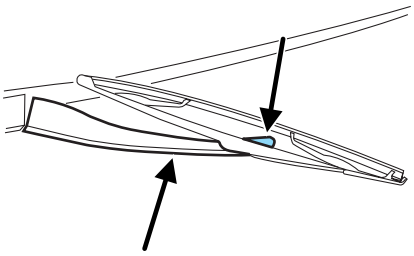
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Changing rear window wiper blade

The rear wiper arm is designed without a service position. This reduces the risk of damage to the blade in an automatic car wash.

To replace the wiper blade:

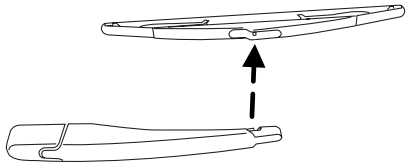
1. Grab the wiper arm with one hand close to the arm/blade joint and pull it as far away from the glass as possible. Do not use excessive force because it can break the wiper arm at the heel. Hold it there until the next step.



2. Grab the primary structure of the blade with the other hand close to the arm/blade joint.

3. Grip tightly and press on the arm/blade joint from beneath and separate the blade from the arm.

4. Attach the new wiper to the wiper arm and press it into place until a click is heard.



If you find this procedure too difficult, please see your dealer.

## ENGINE OIL

### Checking the engine oil

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for checking the engine oil.

1. Make sure the vehicle is on level ground.

2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

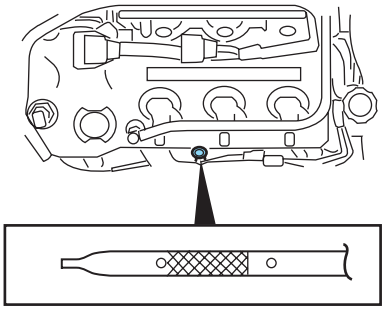
3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).

4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.



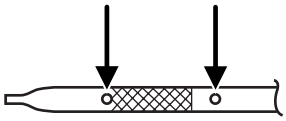
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil level dipstick.

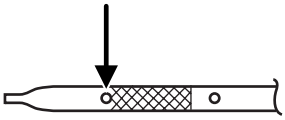


6. Wipe the dipstick clean. Insert the dipstick fully, then remove it again.

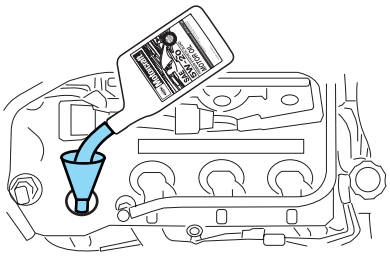
- If the oil level is **within this range,** the oil level is acceptable. **DO NOT ADD OIL.**



- If the oil level is **below this mark,** engine **oil must be added** to raise the level within the normal operating range.



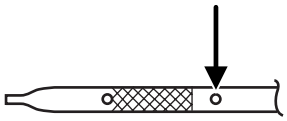
- If required, add engine oil to the engine. Refer to *Adding engine oil* in this chapter.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- **Do not overfill the engine with oil. Oil levels above this mark may cause engine damage.** If the engine is overfilled, some oil must be removed from the engine by an authorized dealer.



7. Put the dipstick back in and ensure it is fully seated.

### Adding engine oil

1. Check the engine oil. For instructions, refer to *Checking the engine oil* in this chapter.

2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal operating range, add only certified engine oil of the recommended viscosity. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.

3. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the normal operating range on the engine oil level dipstick.

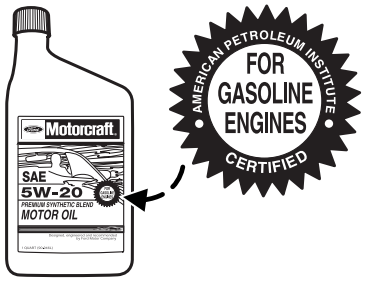
4. Install the dipstick and ensure it is fully seated.

5. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise until it stops.

**To avoid possible oil loss, DO NOT operate the vehicle with the engine oil level dipstick and/or the engine oil filler cap removed.**

### Engine oil and filter recommendations

Look for this certification trademark.






Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil*

Only use oils "Certified For Gasoline Engines" by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

To protect your engine and engine's warranty, use Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 or an equivalent SAE 5W-20 oil meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A. **SAE 5W-20 oil provides optimum fuel economy and durability performance meeting all requirements for your vehicle's engine.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* later in this chapter for more information.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

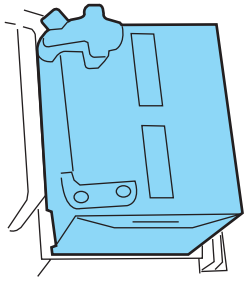
Change your engine oil and filter according to the appropriate schedule listed in the *scheduled maintenance information.*

Ford production and Motorcraft® replacement oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft® oil filter or another with equivalent performance for your engine application.

## BATTERY

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.



**If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This will minimize the discharge of your battery during storage.

**Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.**

**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

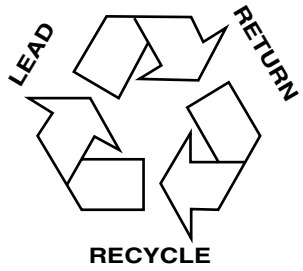
Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Put the gearshift in P (Park), turn off all accessories and start the engine.
3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
6. Release the parking brake. With your foot on the brake pedal and with the A/C on, put the vehicle in D (Drive) and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
7. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.

- The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
- **If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.**

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and radio settings must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.








Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ENGINE COOLANT

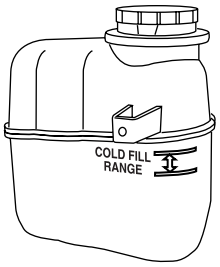
### Checking engine coolant

The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information.* The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and distilled water, which equates to a freeze point of -34°F (-36°C). Coolant concentration testing is possible with a hydrometer or antifreeze tester. The level of coolant should be maintained at the FULL COLD level or within the COLD FILL RANGE in the coolant reservoir. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 engine coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50/50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **Freeze protection down to -34°F (-36°C).**
- **Boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).**
- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Proper function of calibrated gauges.**

When the engine is cold, check the level of the engine coolant in the reservoir.




- The engine coolant should be at the FULL COLD level or within the COLD FILL RANGE as listed on the engine coolant reservoir (depending upon application).
- Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.
- Be sure to read and understand *Precautions when servicing your vehicle* in this chapter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the engine coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the reservoir is low or empty, add engine coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant, antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

### Adding engine coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir, **when the engine is cool,** until the appropriate fill level is obtained.

**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.

**WARNING:** Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

- **Do not mix coolants. Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets or cooling system sealants/additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling and/or heating systems. This damage would not be covered under your vehicle's warranty.

- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- **Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant.** These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For vehicles with overflow coolant systems with a non-pressurized cap on the coolant recovery system, add coolant to the coolant recovery reservoir when the engine is cool. Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the FULL COLD level. For all other vehicles which have a coolant degas system with a pressurized cap, or if it is necessary to remove the coolant pressure relief cap on the radiator of a vehicle with an overflow system, follow these steps to add engine coolant.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the cooling system by following these steps:

1. Before you begin, turn the engine off and let it cool.
2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the coolant pressure relief cap on the coolant reservoir (a translucent plastic bottle). Slowly turn cap counterclockwise (left) until pressure begins to release.
3. Step back while the pressure releases.
4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.
5. Fill the coolant reservoir slowly with the proper coolant mixture, to within the COLD FILL RANGE or the FULL COLD level on the reservoir. If you removed the radiator cap in an overflow system, fill the radiator until the coolant is visible and radiator is almost full.
6. Replace the cap. Turn until tightly installed. Cap must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss.

After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration (refer to *Checking engine coolant*). If the concentration is not 50/50 (protection to –34°F/–36°C), drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of engine coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of engine coolant per month, have your authorized dealer check the engine cooling system.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

### Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

 Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

### Coolant refill capacity

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

Fill your engine coolant reservoir as outlined in *Adding engine coolant* in this section.

### Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates (less than –34°F [–36°C]):

- **It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.**
- **NEVER increase the coolant concentration above 60%.**
- **Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate freeze protection at the temperatures in which you drive in the winter months.**

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- **It is still necessary to maintain the coolant concentration above 40%.**
- **NEVER decrease the coolant concentration below 40%.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate protection at the temperatures in which you drive.**

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

### Engine fluid temperature management (EcoBoost engine only)

Your vehicle has been designed to pull a trailer, but because of the added load, the vehicle's engine may temporarily reach higher temperatures during severe operating conditions such as ascending a long or steep grade while pulling a trailer in hot ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice your engine coolant temperature gauge needle move toward the H and the POWER REDUCED TO LOWER TEMP message may appear on the message center.

You may notice a reduction in the vehicle's speed caused by reduced engine power. Your vehicle has been designed to enter this mode if certain high temperature/high load conditions take place in order to manage the engine's fluid temperatures. The amount of speed reduction will depend on the vehicle loading, towing, grade, ambient temperature, and other factors. If this occurs, there is no need to pull off the road. The vehicle can continue to be driven while this message is active.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of collision and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the fluid temperatures reduce.

The air conditioning may also cycle on and off during severe operating conditions to protect overheating of the engine. When the engine coolant temperature decreases to a more normal operating temperature, the air conditioning will turn on once again.

If you notice any of the following:

- the engine coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red (hot) area
- the coolant temperature warning light illuminates
- the service engine soon indicator illuminates

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and place the vehicle in P (Park).





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle moves away from the H range. After several minutes, if this does not happen, follow the remaining steps.

3. Turn the engine off and wait for it to cool before checking the coolant level.

**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

4. If the coolant level is normal, you may restart your engine and continue on.

5. If the coolant is low, add coolant, restart the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer. See *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter for more information.

Refer to fail-safe cooling for additional information.

### What you should know about fail-safe cooling

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

#### *How fail-safe cooling works*

If the engine begins to overheat:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area.
- The coolant temperature warning light will illuminate.
- The service engine soon indicator will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to a service facility as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *When fail-safe mode is activated*

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to a service facility.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.

**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to a service facility.

**Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to a service facility as soon as possible.**

## FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

## WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT AUTOMOTIVE FUELS

### Important safety precautions

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel™ “no cap” fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** Gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:



- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**WARNING:** The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

### *Refueling*

**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

### Easy Fuel™ “no cap” fuel system

Your fuel tank is equipped with an Easy Fuel™ “no cap” fuel filler system. This allows you to simply open the fuel filler door and insert the fuel filler nozzle into the fuel system. The Easy Fuel™ system is self-sealing and protected against dust, dirt, water and snow/ice.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Open the fuel filler door.
3. Slowly insert the fuel filler nozzle fully into the fuel system. Pump fuel as normal.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. After you are done pumping fuel, slowly remove the fuel filler nozzle—allow about five seconds after pumping fuel before removing the fuel filler nozzle. This allows residual fuel to drain back into the fuel tank and not spill onto the vehicle.

**Note:** A fuel spillage concern may occur if overfilling the fuel tank. Do not overfill the tank to the point that the fuel is able to bypass the fuel filler nozzle. The overfilled fuel may run down the drain located below and in front of the fuel filler door.

If the check fuel fill inlet lamp or CHECK FUEL FILL INLET message comes on, the fuel fill inlet may not have properly closed. The inlet may have stuck open or debris may be preventing the inlet from fully closing. At the next opportunity, safely pull off the road, turn off the engine, open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening. Insert either the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel (see *Refilling with a portable fuel container* for funnel location) provided with the vehicle several times to dislodge any debris and/or allow the inlet to close properly. If this action corrects the problem, the check fuel fill inlet lamp or CHECK FUEL FILL INLET message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the check fuel fill inlet lamp or CHECK FUEL FILL INLET message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city/highway driving. Continuing to drive with the check fuel fill inlet lamp or CHECK FUEL FILL INLET message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel™ “no cap” fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

### Choosing the right fuel

Use only UNLEADED fuel or UNLEADED fuel blended with a maximum of 10% ethanol. Do not use fuel ethanol (E85), diesel, methanol, leaded fuel or any other fuel. The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law and could damage your vehicle.

Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives.

**Note:** Use of any fuel other than those recommended may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and repairs may not be covered under warranty.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

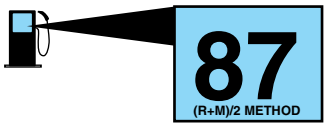
## Octane recommendations

### 3.7L V6 engine

Your vehicle will run normally on 87 octane regular fuel. Premium fuel will provide improved performance.

### 3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine

Your vehicle is designed to run on regular fuel with an octane rating of 87 or higher. For best overall performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel will be most noticeable in hot weather or in severe duty applications such as towing a trailer.




Some stations offer fuels posted as "Regular" with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended for either engine. Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

## Fuel quality

If you are experiencing starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems, try a different brand of unleaded gasoline. If the problems persist, see your authorized dealer.

Do not add aftermarket fuel additive products to your fuel tank. It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket products to your fuel tank if you continue to use high quality fuel of the recommended octane rating. These products have not been approved for your engine and could cause damage to the fuel system. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

Many of the world's automakers approved the World-Wide Fuel Charter that recommends gasoline specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Cleaner air

Ford endorses the use of reformulated “cleaner-burning” gasolines to improve air quality, per the recommendations in the *Choosing the right fuel* section.

### Running out of fuel

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8L) may be required.
- The service engine soon indicator may come on. For more information on the service engine soon indicator, refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

#### *Refilling with a portable fuel container*

With the Easy Fuel™ “no cap” fuel system, use the following directions when filling from a portable fuel container:

**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the Easy Fuel™ system. This could damage the fuel system and its seal, and may cause fuel to run onto the ground instead of filling the tank, which could result in serious personal injury.

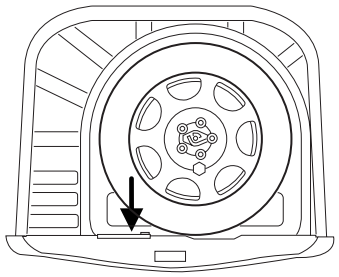
**WARNING:** Do not try to pry open or push open the Easy Fuel™ system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

When filling the vehicle’s fuel tank from a portable fuel container, use the funnel included with the vehicle.

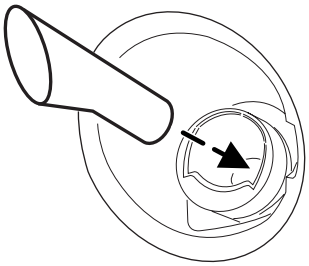


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. After lifting the carpeted floor panel, locate the white plastic funnel. It is attached to the rear, lower edge of the spare tire compartment.



2. Slowly insert the funnel into the Easy Fuel™ system.



3. Fill the vehicle with fuel from the portable fuel container.

4. When done, clean the funnel or properly dispose of it. Extra funnels can be purchased from your authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel. **Do not** use aftermarket funnels; they will not work with the Easy Fuel™ system and can damage it. The included funnel has been specially designed to work safely with your vehicle.

## ESSENTIALS OF GOOD FUEL ECONOMY

### Measuring techniques

Your best source of information about actual fuel economy is you, the driver. You must gather information as accurately and consistently as possible. Fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate as a measure of fuel economy. We do not recommend taking fuel economy measurements during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (engine break-in period). You will get a more accurate measurement after 2,000 miles–3,000 miles (3,000 km–5,000 km).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Filling the tank

The advertised fuel capacity of the fuel tank on your vehicle is equal to the rated refill capacity of the fuel tank as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of this chapter.

The advertised capacity is the amount of the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the small amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.**

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position prior to refueling, an error in the reading will result if the engine is left running.
- Use the same filling rate setting (low — medium — high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.
- Always use fuel with the recommended octane rating.
- Use a known quality gasoline, preferably a national brand.
- Use the same side of the same pump and have the vehicle facing the same direction each time you fill up.
- Have the vehicle loading and distribution the same every time.

Your results will be most accurate if your filling method is consistent.

### Calculating fuel economy

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading (in miles or kilometers).

2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added (in gallons or liters).

3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.

4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Follow one of the simple calculations in order to determine fuel economy:

Calculation 1: **Divide total miles traveled by total gallons used.**

Calculation 2: **Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by total kilometers traveled.**

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This will provide an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures give lower fuel economy.

### Driving style — good driving and fuel economy habits

Give consideration to the lists that follow and you may be able to change a number of variables and improve your fuel economy.

#### *Habits*

- Smooth, moderate operation can yield up to 10% savings in fuel.
- Steady speeds without stopping will usually give the best fuel economy.
- Idling for long periods of time (greater than one minute) may waste fuel.
- Anticipate stopping; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Sudden or hard accelerations may reduce fuel economy.
- Slow down gradually.
- Driving at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Revving the engine before turning it off may reduce fuel economy.
- Using the air conditioner or defroster may reduce fuel economy.
- You may want to turn off the speed control in hilly terrain if unnecessary shifting between the top gears occurs. Unnecessary shifting of this type could result in reduced fuel economy.
- Warming up a vehicle on cold mornings is not required and may reduce fuel economy.
- Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving may reduce fuel economy.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### *Maintenance*

- Keep tires properly inflated and use only recommended size.
- Operating a vehicle with the wheels out of alignment will reduce fuel economy.
- Use recommended engine oil. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance items. Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and owner maintenance checks found in *scheduled maintenance information.*

### *Conditions*

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Carrying unnecessary weight may reduce fuel economy (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 km) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.
- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Close windows for high speed driving.

## EPA fuel economy estimates

Every new vehicle should have a sticker on the window called the Monroney Label which contains EPA fuel economy estimates. Contact your authorized dealer if the Monroney Label is not supplied with your vehicle. The EPA fuel economy estimates should be your guide for the fuel economy comparisons with other vehicles. Your fuel economy may vary depending upon the method of operation and conditions.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft® or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

### On board diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle. When the service engine soon  indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon  indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.

2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.

3. The fuel fill inlet may not have been properly closed. See *Easy Fuel™ "no cap" fuel system* in this chapter.

4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon  indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon  indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon  indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

### Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. Refer to the On board diagnostics (OBD-II) description in this chapter.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

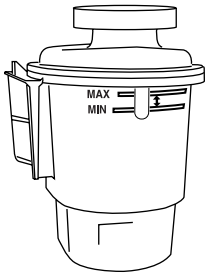
Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

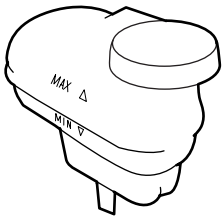
### POWER STEERING FLUID (EXCEPT ECOBOOST ENGINE)

Refer to *scheduled maintenance information.*




1. Start the engine and let it run until it reaches normal operating temperature (the engine coolant temperature gauge indicator will be near the center of the normal area between H and C).
2. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
3. Turn the engine off.
4. Check the fluid level in the reservoir. It should be between the MIN and MAX lines. Do not add fluid if the level is in this range.
5. If the fluid is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until it reaches the range between the MIN and MAX lines. Be sure to put the cap back on the reservoir. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper fluid type.

### BRAKE FLUID




The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## TRANSMISSION FLUID

### Checking automatic transmission fluid

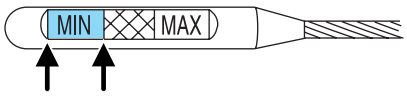
Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

**Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is warmed up (approximately 20 miles [30 km]). If your vehicle has been operated for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic during hot weather or pulling a trailer, the vehicle should be turned off for about 30 minutes to allow fluid to cool before checking.**

1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.
3. With the parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, start the engine and move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage.
4. Latch the gearshift lever in P (Park) and leave the engine running.
5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick. (For vehicles with the EcoBoost engine, move the air filter assembly aside to access the transmission dipstick. See *Changing the air filter element* for more information).
6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.
7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated areas for normal operating temperature.

#### *Low fluid level*

Do not drive the vehicle if the fluid level is at the bottom of the dipstick.




#### *Correct fluid level*

The transmission fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 180°F-200°F (82°C-93°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 20 miles (30 km) of driving.





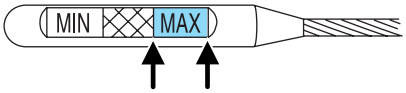
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The transmission fluid should be within the cross-hatch area if at normal operating temperature 180°F-200°F (82°C-93°C).




### *High fluid level*

Fluid levels above the safe range may result in transmission failure. An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.




High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.

### *Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels*

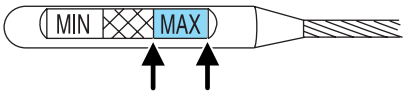
Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick and also in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

**Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.**

If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.




If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by an authorized dealer.




**An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.**

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

## AIR FILTER

Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft® part numbers* in this chapter.

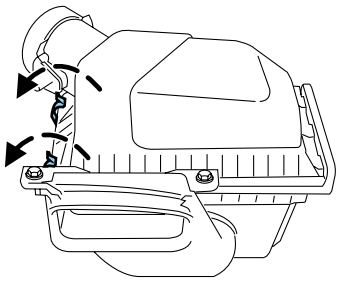


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

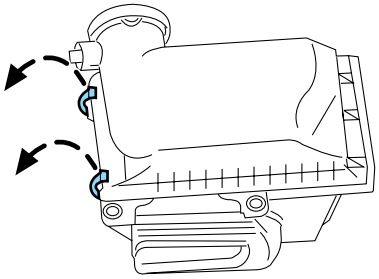
**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

### Changing the air filter element

**3.7L V6**



**3.5L V6 (EcoBoost)**

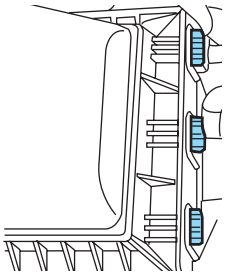


1. Release the clamps that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. Wipe the air filter housing and cover clean to remove any dirt or debris and to ensure good sealing.
5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure the clamps. Be sure that the air cleaner cover tabs are engaged into the slots of the air cleaner housing.



**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

### MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

| Component | 3.7L V6 engine | 3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine |
|---|---|---|
| Engine air filter element | FA-1884 | FA-1884 |
| Battery | BXT-65-750 | BXT-65-750 |
| Oil filter | FL-500-S | FL-500-S |
| Spark Plugs | SP-411[1] | SP-512[1] |

[1]For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

**Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft® or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

**MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES**

| Items | Capacity | Ford Part Name or equivalent | Ford Part Number / Ford Specification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Brake fluid | Between MAX and MIN on reservoir | Motorcraft® High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid | PM-1-C / WSS-M6C62-A or WSS-M6C65-A1 |
| Door latch, hood latch, auxiliary hood latch, seat tracks, trunk and liftgate latches | — | Multi-Purpose Grease | XG-4 or XL-5 / ESA-M1C93-B |
| Lock cylinders | — | Motorcraft® Penetrating and Lock Lubricant | XL-1 / None |
| Automatic transmission fluid (6F50) | 9.4 quarts (8.9L)[1] | Motorcraft® MERCON® LV ATF[2] | XT-10-QLV / MERCON® LV |
| Automatic transmission fluid (6F55) | 10.2 quarts (9.7L)[1] | | |
| Rear differential fluid (AWD) | 2.4 pints (1.15L) | Motorcraft® SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant | XY-80W90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A |
| Power Transfer Unit (PTU) fluid (AWD)[5] | 18 ounces (0.53L) | Motorcraft® SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant | XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A |





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Items | Capacity | Ford Part Name or equivalent | Ford Part Number / Ford Specification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil (3.7L V6 engine) | 5.5 quarts (5.2L) | • Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US)<br>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil (US)<br>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)<br>• Motorcraft® SAE 5W20 Synthetic Motor Oil (Canada)[4] | • XO-5W20-QSP (US)<br>• XO-5W20-QFS (US)<br>• CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada)<br>• CXO-5W20-LFS12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C930-A and API Certification Mark |
| Engine oil (3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine) | 5.5 quarts (5.2L) | See the engine oil fill cap for the proper SAE oil viscosity grade. | WSS-M2C929-A or WSS-M2C930-A and API Certification Mark |
| Engine coolant | 13.2 quarts (12.5L) (3.7L engine)<br>13.7 quarts (13.0L) (3.5L EcoBoost engine) | Motorcraft® Specialty Green Engine Coolant[3] | VC-10-A (US) CVC-10-A (Canada) / WSS-M97B55-A |





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

| Items | Capacity | Ford Part Name or equivalent | Ford Part Number / Ford Specification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Power steering fluid (except EcoBoost engine) | Between MAX and MIN on reservoir | Motorcraft® MERCON® V ATF | XT-5-QM / MERCON® V |
| Fuel tank | 18.6 gallons (70.4L) | — | — |
| Windshield washer fluid | Top- off fluid as needed | Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate | ZC-32-A / WSB-M8B16-A2 |

[1]Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

[2]Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® LV should only use MERCON® LV fluid. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* to determine the correct service interval. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.

[3]Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

[4]Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C929-A or WSS-M2C930-A and the API Certification mark.

[5]See your authorized dealer for fluid level checking or filling.





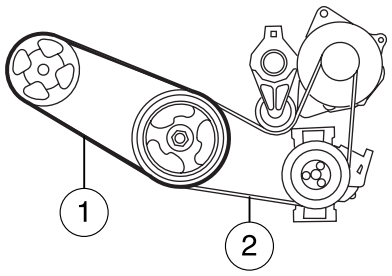
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## ENGINE DATA

| Engine | 3.7L V6 engine | 3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine |
|---|---|---|
| Cubic inches | 226 | 214 |
| Fuel | See *Octane recommendations* earlier in this chapter. | See *Octane recommendations* earlier in this chapter. |
| Firing order | 1–4–2–5–3–6 | 1–4–2–5–3–6 |
| Spark plug gap | 0.052–0.056 inch (1.32–1.42 mm) | 0.033–0.037 inch (.838–.939 mm) |
| Ignition system | Coil on plug | Coil on plug |
| Compression ratio | 10.3:1 | 10.0:1 |

### Engine drivebelt routing

**3.7L V6 engine**




1. Short drivebelt is on first pulley groove closest to engine (except vehicles with electric power assisted steering).

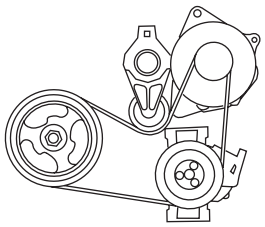
2. Long drivebelt is on second pulley groove farthest from engine.

**3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine**



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

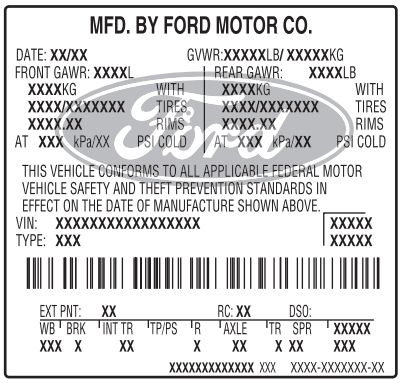
# Maintenance and Specifications



## IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

### Safety Compliance Certification Label

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label is located on the structure (B-Pillar) by the trailing edge of the driver's door or the edge of the driver's door.





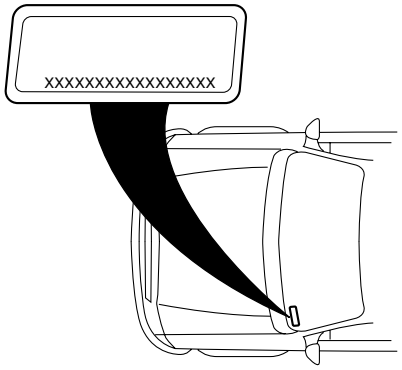



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

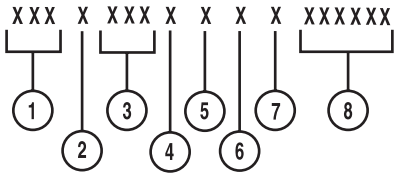
### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.




The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) contains the following information:



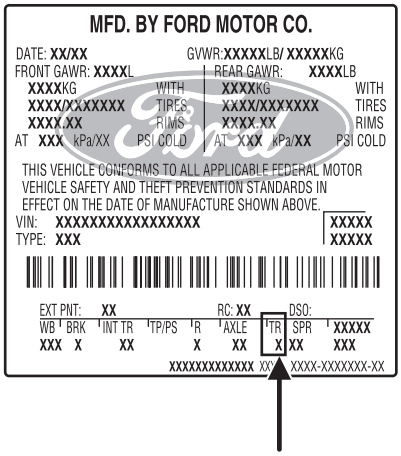

1. World manufacturer identifier
2. Brake system / Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) / Restraint Devices and their location
3. Make, vehicle line, series, body type
4. Engine type
5. Check digit
6. Model year
7. Assembly plant
8. Production sequence number



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATIONS

You can find a transmission code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission each code represents.


MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO.
DATE: XX/XX
GVWR:XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG
FRONT GAWR: XXXXL
REAR GAWR: XXXXLB
XXXXKG WITH TIRES XXXX/XXXXXXX RIMS XXXX.XX
XXXXKG WITH TIRES XXXX/XXXXXXX RIMS XXXX.XX
AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD
AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
TYPE: XXX
XXXXX
XXXXX
EXT PNT: XX
RC: XX
DSO:
WB BRK INT TR TP/PS R AXLE TR SPR XXXXX
XXX X XX X XX X XX XXX
XXXXXXXXXXXX XX XXXX-XXXXXXX-XX

| Description | Code |
|---|---|
| 6F50 6–Speed Automatic Transmission | J |
| 6F55 6–Speed Automatic Transmission (with EcoBoost) | G |





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## GENUINE LINCOLN ACCESSORIES FOR YOUR VEHICLE

A wide selection of Genuine Lincoln Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Lincoln or Ford of Canada dealer. These quality accessories have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and aerodynamic appearance of your vehicle. In addition, each accessory is made from high quality materials and meets or exceeds Lincoln's rigorous engineering and safety specifications. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Genuine Lincoln Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Following is a list of several Genuine Lincoln Accessories. Not all accessories are available for all models. To find out what accessories are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at: www.lincolnaccessories.com.

### Exterior style

Deflectors

Chrome wheels

### Interior style

Floor mats

### Lifestyle

Cargo organization and management

Conversation mirror

### Peace of mind

Remote start

Locking fuel plug for capless fuel systems

Cargo area protector

Wheel locks



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Accessories

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by a qualified service technician.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the Amateur Radio Antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## FORD ESP EXTENDED SERVICE PLANS

More than 30 million Ford, Lincoln, and Mercury owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford ESP. It is the only extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides "peace of mind" protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

***Up to 500+ Covered Vehicle Components***

There are four, new-vehicle Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask you dealer for details.

**PremiumCare –** Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 500 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what's not covered!

**ExtraCare –** Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.

**BaseCare –** Covers 84 components.

**PowertrainCare –** Covers 29 critical components.

**Ford ESP is honored by all Ford, Lincoln and Mercury Dealers in the U.S. and Canada** It's the only extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company. That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service anywhere you go.
- **Factory-trained technicians.**
- **Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Parts.**

***Rental car reimbursement***

**If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs,** you are eligible for rental car coverage, including Bumper-to-Bumper warranty repairs, or manufacturer's recalls.

***Transferable coverage***

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford ESP coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you're ready to sell your car, prospective buyers may feel better about taking a risk on your used vehicle. Ford ESP may add resale value!

Plus, **exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance,** including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out-of-fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

## Ford Extended Service Plan

***Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself***

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford ESP Service Contract. With Ford ESP, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

***Avoid the rising cost of properly maintaining your vehicle!***

Ford ESP also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers items that **routinely wear out**.

The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of items that require periodic attention for **normal "wear"**:

- **Wiper blades**
- **Spark plugs (except California)**
- **Clutch disc**
- **Brake pads and linings**
- **Shock absorbers**
- **Belts and hoses**

Contact your selling Ford, Lincoln, or Mercury dealership today so they can customize a Ford Extended Service Plan that fits your driving lifestyle and budget.

***Interest free finance options available***

Take advantage of our installment payment plan, just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable no interest, no-fee payment opportunity.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

---

***Get Genuine Peace of Mind with Ford ESP!***

To learn more, complete the information below and mail this to:

**Ford ESP**
**P.O. Box 8072**
**Royal Oak, MI 48068-9933**

NAME (PLEASE PRINT) _____

ADDRESS _____ APT.NO. _____

CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____

E-MAIL: _____





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Index


**A**

Accessing the help screen .....51
Accessing the music in your jukebox .....47
Accessing your calendar .....51
Accessory delay .....119
Active Park Assist .....305
Adaptive Cruise Control .....124
AdvanceTrac .....287
Air cleaner filter .....409–411
Air conditioning .....89
Airbag supplemental restraint system .....211, 220, 222
  and child safety seats .....213
  description .....211, 220, 222
  disposal .....225
  driver airbag .....213, 220, 223
  indicator light .....219, 225
  operation .....213, 220, 223
  passenger airbag .....213, 220, 223
  side airbag .....220
All Wheel Drive (AWD), driving off road .....318
Ambient mood/lighting .....105
AM/FM .....41
Antifreeze (see Engine coolant) .....388
Anti-lock brake system (see Brakes) .....286
Anti-theft system .....165, 173
  arming the system .....174
  disarming a triggered system .....175
  triggering .....175
Audio system (see Radio) .....32

Automatic transaxle
  fluid, refill capacities .....412
  fluid, specification .....412
Automatic transmission
  driving an automatic overdrive .....296
  fluid, adding .....408
  fluid, checking .....408
  Selectshift (SST) .....298
Auxiliary input jack (Line in) ....59

**B**

Battery .....385
  acid, treating emergencies .....385
  jumping a disabled battery ....353
  maintenance-free .....385
  replacement, specifications ...411
  servicing .....385
Belt-Minder® .....207
Blind Spot Information System .....312
Blind Spot Spotter Mirror .....310
Booster seats .....240
Brakes .....285
  anti-lock .....286
  anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light .....286
  fluid, checking and adding ....407
  fluid, refill capacities .....412
  fluid, specifications .....412
  lubricant specifications .....412
  parking .....286
  shift interlock .....295
Bulbs .....105

**C**

Capacities for refilling fluids ....412





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Index


Car2U® Home Automation System .....139
Cargo area shade .....148
Cargo net .....148
CD .....44
Cell phone use .....8
Changing a tire .....336
Child safety seats .....230
  in front seat .....231
  in rear seat .....231
  LATCH .....234
  recommendations .....228
  tether anchorage hardware ...237
Child safety seats - booster seats .....240
Cleaning your vehicle
  engine compartment .....370
  instrument panel .....372
  interior .....373
  plastic parts .....371
  washing .....368
  waxing .....369
  wheels .....369
  wiper blades .....371
Climate control (see Air conditioning or Heating) .....89
Collision Warning System .....303
Console
  overhead .....112
Controls
  power seat .....179
  steering column .....132
Coolant
  checking and adding .....388
  refill capacities .....391, 412
  specifications .....412
Cooler .....113
Creating a playlist .....49
Cross Traffic Alert .....312
Cruise control (see Speed control) .....122
Customer Assistance .....325
  Ford Extended Service Plan .....421
  Getting assistance outside the U.S. and Canada .....365
  Getting roadside assistance ...325
  Getting the service you need .....361
  Ordering additional owner's literature .....366
  Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program .....365

**D**

Daytime running lamps (see Lamps) .....101
Defrost
  rear window and rearview mirrors .....89
  windshield .....89
Dipstick
  automatic transmission fluid .....408
  engine oil .....382
Doors
  central unlocking .....151
Driving restrictions .....35
Driving under special conditions .....320, 322
  sand .....321
  snow and ice .....323
  through water .....321, 324
DVD system .....67





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Index


**E**

Electronic message center .....18
Emergencies, roadside
  jump-starting .....353
  running out of fuel .....353, 399
Emission control system .....404
Engine .....415
  cleaning .....370
  coolant .....388
  fail-safe cooling .....393
  idle speed control .....385
  lubrication specifications .....412
  refill capacities .....412
  service points .....378–379
Engine block heater .....284
Engine oil .....382
  change oil soon warning, message center .....382
  checking and adding .....382
  dipstick .....382
  filter, specifications .....384, 411
  recommendations .....384
  refill capacities .....412
  specifications .....412
Event data recording .....7
Exhaust fumes .....283

**F**

Fail safe cooling .....393
Family entertainment system ....67
Fleet MyKey programming .....167
Fluid capacities .....412
Fog lamps .....98
Four-Wheel Drive vehicles
  driving off road .....319
Freezer .....113
426
Fuel .....394
  calculating fuel economy .....20, 400
  cap .....396
  capacity .....412
  choosing the right fuel .....397
  comparisons with EPA fuel economy estimates .....403
  detergent in fuel .....399
  filler funnel .....399
  filling your vehicle with fuel .....394, 396, 401
  filter, specifications .....394, 411
  fuel pump shut-off .....327
  improving fuel economy .....400
  octane rating .....398, 415
  quality .....398
  running out of fuel .....353, 399
  safety information relating to automotive fuels .....394
Fuses .....327

**G**

Garage door opener .....134
Gas cap (see Fuel cap) .....396
Gas mileage
(see Fuel economy) .....400
Gauges .....17

**H**

Hazard flashers .....326
Headlamps .....96
  aiming .....102
  autolamp system .....97
  bulb specifications .....106
  daytime running lights .....101
  flash to pass .....101
  high beam .....98
  replacing bulbs .....107





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

turning on and off .....96
Heating
heating and air conditioning system .....89
Home screen .....35
Homelink wireless control system .....135
Hood .....377

## I

Ignition .....279, 415
Illuminated visor mirror .....111
Infant seats
(see Safety seats) .....230
Inspection/maintenance (I/M) testing .....406
Instrument panel
cleaning .....372
cluster .....12
lighting up panel and interior .....102
Intelligent Access Key .....150
Intelligent Access with push button start .....157

## J

Jack .....336
positioning .....336
storage .....336
Jukebox features .....46
Jump-starting your vehicle .....353

## K

Keyless entry system
autolock .....152
keypad .....163
locking and unlocking doors ..164
programming entry code .....163
Keys .....166
positions of the ignition .....279

## L

Lamps
autolamp system .....97
bulb replacement specifications chart .....106
daytime running light .....101
fog lamps .....98
headlamps .....96
headlamps, flash to pass .....101
instrument panel, dimming ...102
interior lamps .....104, 107
replacing bulbs .....107
LATCH anchors .....234
Liftgate .....144, 158
Lights, warning and indicator ....12
anti-lock brakes (ABS) .....286
Load limits .....267
Loading pictures .....36
Locks
autolock .....152
childproof .....155
doors .....151
Lubricant specifications .....412
Lug nuts .....352

## M

Message center .....18–19
english/metric button .....24
system check button .....24
warning messages .....24
Mirrors .....119–120



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

# Index


automatic dimming rearview mirror .....120
fold away .....121
heated .....89, 121
programmable memory .....159
side view mirrors (power) .....120
Mobile media system .....32
Moon roof .....133
Motorcraft® parts .....374, 411
MyKey .....167

**N**

Navigation system .....88

**O**

Octane rating .....398
Oil (see Engine oil) .....382
Overdrive .....295

**P**

Parental MyKey programming .....167
Park Assist .....305
Parking brake .....286
Parts (see Motorcraft® parts) .....411
Passenger Occupant Classification Sensor .....199
Pedals (see Power adjustable foot pedals) .....121
Playing a DVD in the system .....45
Power adjustable foot pedals .....121–122
Power distribution box (see Fuses) .....332
Power door locks .....151
Power liftgate .....144
Power mirrors .....120
Power point .....114
Power steering .....293
fluid, checking and adding .....407
fluid, refill capacity .....412
fluid, specifications .....412
Power Windows .....117
Push button start system .....281

**R**

Radio .....32
Rear heated seats .....193
Rear heated/cooled seats .....193
Rear seat entertainment system .....67
Rear view camera display .....37
Rear-view camera system .....301
Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children .....228
Refrigerator .....113
Relays .....327
Remote entry system .....156–157
illuminated entry .....161–162
locking/unlocking doors .....158
opening the trunk .....158
panic alarm .....159
replacement/additional transmitters .....161
replacing the batteries .....160
Reverse sensing system .....299





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Roadside assistance .....325

**S**

Safety belts (see Safety restraints) .....197, 200, 202–205
Safety Canopy .....220, 222
Safety defects, reporting .....367
Safety restraints .....197, 200, 202–205
  Belt-Minder® .....207
  extension assembly .....206
  for adults .....202–205
  for children .....226
  Occupant Classification Sensor .....199
  warning light and chime .....206
Safety restraints - LATCH anchors .....234
Safety seats for children .....230
Safety Compliance Certification Label .....416
Satellite Radio (if equipped) .....64
Seats .....176
  child safety seats .....230
  climate control .....89, 182, 194
  easy access/easyout feature ..184
  front seats .....181, 193
  heated .....193
  memory seat .....159, 183
  second row seats .....188, 191
  third row seats .....191, 194–195
Second-row power fold seat ....191
SecuriCode keyless entry system .....163
SecuriLock passive anti-theft system .....165
Servicing your vehicle .....376
Setting the clock .....40
SOS Post Crash Alert .....225
Sound features .....53
Spare tire (see Changing the Tire) .....338
Spark plugs, specifications .....411, 415
Specification chart, lubricants .....412
Speed control .....122
Starting your vehicle .....279–281
  jump starting .....353
  push button start system .....281
Steering wheel
  controls .....132
  tilting .....111
SYNC® .....88
System limitations .....57

**T**

Temporary mobility kit .....343
Third-row power fold seat .....196
Tilt steering wheel .....111
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)
  Tires, Wheels and Loading ....261
Tires .....246–247, 336
  alignment .....254
  care .....250
  changing .....336, 338–339
  checking the pressure .....250
  inflating .....248
  label .....260
  replacing .....252
  rotating .....254
  safety practices .....253



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sidewall information .....255
snow tires and chains .....266
spare tire .....336
Temporary mobility kit .....343
terminology .....247
tire grades .....247
treadwear .....246, 251
Towing .....273
recreational towing .....278
trailer towing .....273
wrecker .....359
Transaxle
fluid, refill capacities .....412
lubricant specifications .....412
Transmission .....295
brake-shift interlock (BSI) ....295
fluid, checking and adding (automatic) .....408
Troubleshooting .....58
Turn signal .....103

**U**

Universal garage door opener .....134
USB port .....61

**V**

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) .....417
Vehicle loading .....267
Ventilating your vehicle .....283

**W**

Warning lights (see Lights) .....12
Washer fluid .....380
Water, Driving through .....324
Windows
power .....117
rear wiper/washer .....110
Windshield washer fluid and wipers .....109
checking and adding fluid .....380
liftgate reservoir .....380
replacing wiper blades ...381–382
Wrecker towing .....359



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine